2016

FACULTY OF

Informatics and Design

creating futures

Cape Peninsula University of Technology

CONTACT DETAILS

NAME .....

ADDRESS .....

CELL .....

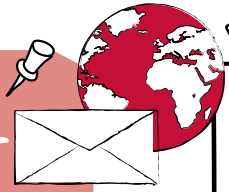
EMAIL .....

CAMPUS .....

RESIDENCE .....

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY CONTACT .....

You have registered at the Faculty of Informatics and Design. Here are our details, just in case you need them:



Physical Address

Faculty of Informatics & Design
Cape Peninsula University of Technology
Corner of Keizergracht & Tenant Streets
District Six
CAPE TOWN

Faculty of Informatics & Design
Cape Peninsula University of Technology
10th Floor, Media City Building
c/o Heerengracht Street & Hertzog Blvd
Foreshore
CAPE TOWN

Faculty of Informatics & Design
Cape Peninsula University of Technology
80 Roeland Street
CAPE TOWN

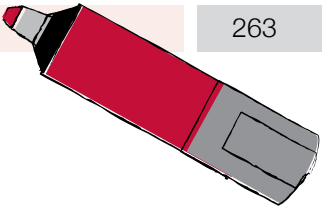
Postal Address

Faculty of Informatics & Design
Cape Peninsula University of Technology
PO Box 652
CAPE TOWN
8000

Faculty of Informatics & Design
Cape Peninsula University of Technology
Media City Building
P O Box 652
CAPE TOWN
8000

Faculty of Informatics & Design
Cape Peninsula University of Technology
80 Roeland Street
PO Box 652
CAPE TOWN
8000

CONTENTS



Every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of the information in this handbook; however the University reserves the right at any time, if circumstances require making changes to any of the published details.

VISION AND MISSION

Vision

Leading creativity and innovation in Africa.

Mission

The Faculty of Informatics & Design provides an environment conducive to creativity and innovation where:

- People are the focus and programmes are relevant to society's needs;
- Appropriate technologies are explored and applied;
- Excellence in teaching and learning is actively supported;
- A culture of research and scholarship with emphasis on trans-disciplinarity is promoted;
- Personal and professional growth is nurtured;
- Graduates are critical thinkers and leaders in their fields.

CONTACT DETAILS:
Staff Members

It is important to know whom you will be dealing with for the duration of your time at the Faculty of Informatics and Design. Here are all the contact details you will need.

FACULTY OFFICE-BEARERS

Position	Name	Telephone	E-mail
Dean	Prof J Cronje	021 469 1018	cronjej@cput.ac.za
Secretary	Ms J Jacobs	021 469 1022	jacobsj@cput.ac.za
Assistant Dean	Post Vacant		
Research Coordinator	Prof R de la Harpe	021 469 1015	delaharper@cput.ac.za
Work Integrated Learning Coordinator	Mr D Jackson	021 440 2224	jacksond@cput.ac.za
Teaching & Learning Coordinator	Mr R Rossouw	021 469 1057	roussouwr@cput.ac.za
IT Coordinator	Mr W Koopman	021 460 3706	koopmanw@cput.ac.za
Project, Marketing & Events Coordinator	Ms M Allie	021 469 1020	alliem@cput.ac.za
Department Head: Research, Innovation & Partnerships	Post Vacant		
Language Coordinator	Dr E Pineteh	021 469 1040	pinetehe@cput.ac.za
Faculty Manager	Mr J Cona	021 460 3872	conaj@cput.ac.za
Secretary	Ms N Mahlutshana	021 460 3107	mahlutshanan@cput.ac.za
Faculty Officer	Ms J L Penfold	021 460 3243	penfoldj@cput.ac.za
Assistant Faculty Officer	Ms A Khan	021 460 3243	khana@cput.ac.za
Assistant Faculty Officer	Ms T Madadasana	021 460 3392	madadasanat@cput.ac.za
Architectural Technology, Interior Design & Town & Regional Planning	Ms T Madadasana	021 440 2237	mfikis@cput.ac.za
Faculty Assistant Information Technology	Mr S Mfiki	021 460 3959	mfikis@cput.ac.za
Faculty Assistant Fashion, Graphic, Jewellery, Surface & Three Dimensional Design	Ms P Makubalo	021 460 3296	makubalop@cput.ac.za
Faculty Assistant Film & Video Technology, Journalism, Photography & Public Relations Management	Mr M Mthethwa	021 460 3923	mthethwam@cput.ac.za

HEADS OF DEPARTMENTS

Campus	Programme	Name	Telephone	E-mail
Cape Town	Design Foundation Fashion Design Surface Design Graphic Design Industrial Design Jewellery Design Surface Design	Mr BMH Verveckken	021 460 8308	verveckkenb@cput.ac.za
Cape Town	Higher Certificate in Information & Communication Technology Diplomas in ICT in: Applications Development, Communication Networks, Multimedia Applications, B Tech: Multimedia Technology B Tech: Information Technology	Prof B M Alexander	021 460 3780	alexanderb@cput.ac.za
Cape Town	Film & Video Technology Journalism Photography Public Relations Management	Prof N Bechan	021 469 1044	bechann@cput.ac.za
Cape Town Media City	Architectural Technology & Interior Design	Post vacant	021 440 2228	
Cape Town Media City	Town & Regional Planning	Post vacant	021 440 2252	tapelan@cput.ac.za
Cape Town	Research, Innovation & Partnerships	Post Vacant		

DEPARTMENT OF APPLIED DESIGN

Name	Position	Telephone	E-mail
Mr B Verveckken	Head of Department	021 460 8308	Verveckkenb@cput.ac.za
Ms M Gordon	Secretary to Head of Department	021 460 7221	Gordonm@cput.ac.za
Ms C Simons	Administrative Assistant for Graphic & Surface Design	021 460 3676	Simonsc@cput.ac.za
Ms Y Vika	Administrative Assistant for Industrial & Fashion Design	021 460 3754	Vikay@cput.ac.za
Ms F Kader	Administrative Assistant for Design Foundation Year		Kaderf@cput.ac.za
Mr R Davids	Administrative Assistant for Jewellery Design	021 460 3157	Davidsre@cput.ac.za

DEPARTMENT OF ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY & INTERIOR DESIGN

Name	Position	Telephone	E-mail
Post vacant	Head of Department	021 440 2228	
Ms C Pietersen	Secretary to Head of Department	021 440 2232	Pietersenc@cput.ac.za

DEPARTMENT OF INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Name	Position	Telephone	E-mail
Prof B Alexander	Head of Department	021 460 3780	Alexanderb@cput.ac.za
Ms N Allie	Secretary to Head of Department	021 460 3010	Allien@cput.ac.za

MEDIA DEPARTMENT

Name	Position	Telephone	E-mail
Prof N Bechan	Head of Department	021 469 1044	Bechann@cput.ac.za
Ms N Rice	Secretary to Head of Department and Administrative Assistant for Public Relations Management	021 469 1042	Ricen@cput.ac.za
Ms A America	Administrative Assistant for Photography	021 469 1110	Americaa@cput.ac.za
Ms K Arendse	Administrative Assistant for Journalism and Film & Video Technology	021 460 3198	Arendseka@cput.ac.za

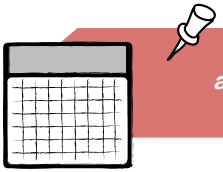
DEPARTMENT OF TOWN & REGIONAL PLANNING

Name	Position	Telephone	E-mail
Ms Z Fatyela	Secretary to Head of Department	021 440 2260	Fatyelaz@cput.ac.za

DEPARTMENT OF RESEARCH, INNOVATION AND PARTNERSHIPS

Name	Position	Telephone	E-mail
Head of Department	Post vacant		
Ms J Khuzwayo	Secretary	021 469 1014	khuzwayoj@cput.ac.za
Ms H Mackenzie	Administrative Assistant	021 460 3447	mackenzieh@cput.ac.za
Prof R de la Harpe	Research Coordinator	021 469 9057	delaharper@cput.ac.za
Ms V Naidoo	Postgraduate Administrator	021 469 1012	naidoove@cput.ac.za
Project Manager: Innovation, Technology & Partnerships	Post vacant		
Ms M Allie	Project, Marketing & Events Coordinator	021 469 1020	alliem@cput.ac.za
Associate Professor	Post vacant		

ACADEMIC PROGRAMME 2016



Get to know your academic calendar for the year 2016.

MON	TUE	WED	THU	FRI	
				1 Jan	All admin staff on duty from 4 Jan
4 Jan	5 Jan	6 Jan	7 Jan	8 Jan	
					Academic staff return 11 Jan. Registration for returning students open 11 Jan. Registration for 1st years open 15 Jan.
11 Jan	12 Jan	13 Jan	14 Jan	15 Jan	
18 Jan	19 Jan	20 Jan	21 Jan	22 Jan	15 Feb
25 Jan	26 Jan	27 Jan	28 Jan	29 Jan	Registration ends 29 Jan.
1 Feb	2 Feb	3 Feb	4 Feb	5 Feb	1 February: Lectures commence
8 Feb	9 Feb	10 Feb	11 Feb	12 Feb	
15 Feb	16 Feb	17 Feb	18 Feb	19 Feb	
22 Feb	23 Feb	24 Feb	25 Feb	26 Feb	
29 Feb	1 Mar	2 Mar	3 Mar	4 Mar	
7 Mar	8 Mar	9 Mar	10 Mar	11 Mar	
14 Mar	15 Mar	16 Mar	17 Mar	18 Mar	Term end 28 Mar
21 Mar	22 Mar	23 Mar	24 Mar	25 Mar	
28 Mar	29 Mar	30Mar	31Mar	1 Apr	
4 Apr	5 Apr	6 Apr	7 Apr	8 Apr	Term opens 4 April
11 Apr	12 Apr	13 Apr	14 Apr	15 Apr	11 – 15 April: Autumn graduation week
18 Apr	19 Apr	20 Apr	21 Apr	22 Apr	
25 Apr	26 Apr	27 Apr	28 Apr	29 Apr	
2 May	3 May	4 May	5 May	6 May	
9 May	10 May	11 May	12 May	13 May	Classes end 13 May
16 May	17 May	18 May	19 May	20 May	Assessment commence on 19 May
23 May	24 May	25 May	26 May	27 May	
30 May	31 May	1 Jun	2 Jun	3 Jun	
6Jun	7 Jun	8 Jun	9 Jun	10Jun	
13 Jun	14 Jun	15 Jun	16 Jun	17 Jun	

MON	TUE	WED	THU	FRI	
20 Jun	21 Jun	22 Jun	23 Jun	24 Jun	24 Jun Results publication &Term ends
27 Jun	28 Jun	29 Jun	30 Jun	1 Jul	
4 Jul	5 Jul	6 Jul	7 Jul	8 Jul	
11 Jul	12 Jul	13 Jul	14 Jul	15 Jul	
18 Jul	19 Jul	20 Jul	21 Jul	22 Jul	Term opens 18 Jul
25 Jul	26 Jul	27 Jul	28 Jul	29 Jul	
1 Aug	2 Aug	3 Aug	4 Aug	5 Aug	
8 Aug	9 Aug	10 Aug	11 Aug	12 Aug	
15 Aug	16 Aug	17 Aug	18 Aug	19 Aug	
22 Aug	23 Aug	24 Aug	25 Aug	26 Aug	
29 Aug	30 Aug	31 Aug	1 Sep	2 Sep	Term ends 2 Sep
5 Sep	6 Sep	7 Sep	8 Sep	9 Sep	
12 Sep	13 Sep	14 Sep	15 Sep	16 Sep	Term opens 12 Sep. 16 September: Spring Graduation
19 Sep	20 Sep	21 Sep	22 Sep	23 Sep	
26 Sep	27 Sep	28 Sep	29 Sep	30 Sep	
3Oct	4 Oct	5 Oct	6 Oct	7 Oct	
10 Oct	11 Oct	12 Oct	13 Oct	14 Oct	
17 Oct	18 Oct	19 Oct	20 Oct	21 Oct	
24Oct	25 Oct	26 Oct	27 Oct	28 Oct	
31Oct	1 Nov	2 Nov	3 Nov	4 Nov	Assessment commences 3 November
7 Nov	8 Nov	9 Nov	10 Nov	11 Nov	
14 Nov	15 Nov	16 Nov	17 Nov	18 Nov	
21 Nov	22 Nov	23 Nov	24 Nov	25 Nov	
28 Nov	29 Nov	30 Nov	01 Dec	2 Dec	
5 Dec	6 Dec	7 Dec	8 Dec	9 Dec	09 Dec: Publication of results
12 Dec	13 Dec	14 Dec	15 Dec		CPUT term and 15 Dec

Message from the Vice-Chancellor

Dear Students

Welcome to a very special year at CPUT- our 10th birthday celebration. For a decade we have produced some of the country's most promising graduates and I am certain that you will also one day walk across the stage in front of me during your graduation and join their ranks as a proud CPUT alumnus.

Each year our Admissions Department is flooded with thousands of applications from across the country by young people, just like you, who recognise that CPUT is a leader in innovation and technology. Whether you are a first year or a returning student, you have fought hard to get a seat at our institution and that determination should follow you through to the end of your studies.

Be determined to say no to negative influences, to give your best to each and every evaluation and to becoming a well-rounded student who fully participates in the multitude of extra-mural activities that are available to you through our Student Affairs Department.

We are also determined to ensuring you are fully supported on your journey to graduation. There are a number of intervention units in place to assist students. These include the Student Learning unit which assists you with attributes like academic literacy, study skills and time management. I urge all of you to make contact with this unit and the many others like Student Counseling, the clinic and HIV/Aids unit who are all dedicated to your future success.

Ultimately however your success lies in your own hands. The journey for 2016 starts right now and I wish you well along your way.

Your Vice-Chancellor

Dr Prins Nevhutalu

Campus info

ATHLONE SERVICE POINT
Klipfontein Road, Heideveld
PO BOX 1906
Tel +27 21 684 1200
BELLVILLE
7535

BELLVILLE CAMPUS
Symphony Way, Bellville
PO BOX 1906
Tel +27 21 959 6911
BELLVILLE
7535

CAPE TOWN CAMPUS
Keizersgracht, Cape Town
PO BOX 652
Tel +27 21 460 3911
CAPE TOWN
8000

GRANGER BAY CAMPUS
Beach Road, Mouille Point
PO BOX 652
Tel +27 21 440 5700
CAPE TOWN
8000

MOWBRAY CAMPUS
Highbury Road, Mowbray
PO BOX 652
Tel +27 21 680 1500
CAPE TOWN
8000

MEDIA CITY
10th Floor
No 1 Heerengracht
Rua Vasco Da Gama Entrance
FORESHORE
8000

WELLINGTON CAMPUS
Jan van Riebeeck Street, Wellington
PRIVATE BAG X8
Tel +27 21 864 5200
WELLINGTON
7654

Enquiries:
086 123 2788 (086 123 CPUT)

CORE VALUES

democracy respect
integrity excellence accountability
equity ubuntu innovation

Department of Student Affairs

The Department of Student Affairs (DSA) is a fully integrated student support service aimed at developing the holistic potential of all students through excellence and maximum participation in the five main focus areas of its operation, namely:

Student Development
Student Governance (including the SRC)
Arts and Culture
Sport Development
Student Media

We currently have offices at the following CPUT Campuses:

Bellville Campus

Student Development and Arts and Culture: New Library Extension, Ground Floor
Tel +27 21 959 6261 Fax +27 21 959 6110

Sport Development: Major Sport Hall, 1st Floor
Tel +27 21 959 6319 Fax +27 21 959 6089

Student Representative Council and Student Structures:
Student Centre, 1st Floor

Cape Town Campus

Student Affairs Offices: Student Centre, 4th Level
Tel +27 21 460 3149 Fax +27 21 460 3720

Sport Development: Multipurpose Hall, 2nd Level
Tel +27 21 460 3844 Fax +27 21 460 3845

Student Representative Council and Student Structures:
Student Centre, 1st Floor

Mowbray Campus

Student Representative Council and Student Structures:
New Gymnasium, Room 110

Wellington Campus

Student Governance: E Block, Room E6B
Tel +27 21 864 5519 Fax +27 21 864 2033

Sport Development: F Block, Room F2A and B
Tel +27 21 864 5507 Fax +27 21 864 5508

Student Representative Council and Student Structures:
E Block, Room E6C

Emergency contact details

STATE AMBULANCE SERVICES

State Ambulance Emergencies.....**10177**
Police Flying Squad **10111**
Fire Brigade (Back/Neck Injuries) **021 535 1100**

Poison Information Centre:

Red Cross **021 689 5227**
Tygerberg Hospital.....**021 931 6129**

PRIVATE AMBULANCES

Emergencies services after hours ...**021 950 8989**
Western Cape Paramedics **0800 225 599**

STATE HOSPITALS

Groote Schuur (Dr Stein FP) **021 404 9111**
Trauma Unit **021 404 4112**
Psychiatric Emergency Unit **021 404 2175**
Medical Emergency Unit **021 404 4141**

CAMPUS SECURITY

Bellville 0**21 959 6341**
Cape Town **021 460 3122**

CAMPUS CLINICS

Bellville Campus **021 959 6403**
Cape Town Campus.....**021 460 3405**
Mowbray Campus **021 680 1555**
Wellington Campus **021 864 5278**

RAPE CRISIS
021 447 9762

POLICE
10111

LIFE LINE
021 461 1111

HIV / AIDS NATIONAL HELP LINE
0800 012 322

GROOTE SCHUUR HOSPITAL TRAUMA UNIT: - THUTHUZELA
021 404 3031

G.F. JOOSTE HOSPITAL TRAUMA UNIT: THUTHUZELA
021 690 1011 / 1000

KARL BREMER TRAUMA UNIT (BELLVILLE)
021 949 0296

SOMERSET HOSPITAL TRAUMA UNIT (GREEN POINT)
021 402 6000

HIV/AIDS unit: Vision and Mission

VISION

To be the epicentre of excellence in HIV/AIDS Programmes at higher education institutions in Africa.

MISSION

To mitigate the impact of HIV/AIDS/STI and TB by promoting, advocating, facilitating and implementing innovative interventions among students, staff and the community.

We strive to develop, equip, influence and empower individuals in skills and knowledge through educating, teaching, training, learning and research in the prevention of HIV/AIDS/STI and TB. We also render a quality service, to those infected and affected, towards achieving holistic health and sustaining a healthy lifestyle.

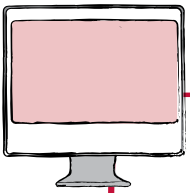
CORE OBJECTIVES

- Curricular Integration of HIV/AIDS/STI & TB
- Student and staff training workshops
- Awareness campaigns
- Peer Education
- Community Outreach
- Workplace Programme
- Care and support of HIV negative & positive clients
- Wellness Mobile
- Internship and Volunteer Programme
- Research

CONTACT DETAILS:

CAPE TOWN OFFICE:
Admin Building, 2nd Floor
(Opposite Applications office)
Tel: 021 460 4253/2

BELLVILLE OFFICE:
Opposite Tabeisa Cafe
Tel: 021 959 6898/6828



ONLINE DETAILS:

Website: www.cput.ac.za/hivaids

Facebook: CPUT HIV/AIDS Unit

Twitter: @cputhivaidsunit

Health services

Campus Health Clinics telephone numbers:

Bellville Campus Clinic
Tel: 021 959 6403
Fax: 021 959 6123

Cape Town Campus Clinic
Tel: 021 460 3405
Fax: 021 460 3638

Mowbray Campus Clinic
Tel: 021 680 1555
Fax: 021 680 3952

Wellington Campus Clinic
Tel: 021 864 5522
Fax: 021 864 5278

HIV/AIDS UNIT

Cape Town Campus
Room 2.00a, Level 2, Administration Building, Cape Town
Tel: 021 460 4253
Fax: 021 460 4244
Email: mohammedaa@cput.ac.za

Bellville Campus
Temporary office opposite Start Up Café
Tel: 021 959 6807
Email: runeyip@cput.ac.za

DISABILITY UNIT

Bellville and Wellington Campuses as well as Athlone and Tygerberg Service Points:
IT Centre, Ground Floor, Room 1.09,
Bellville Campus,
Tel: 021 953 8447
Tel: 021 959 6964

Cape Town, Granger Bay and Mowbray Campuses:
Ground floor, Level 2, Atrium, Administration Building, Cape Town Campus,
Tel: 021 460 9071

CONTACT:
Dr Nina du Toit
Room 1.09 & 1.10, Ground Floor, IT Centre, Bellville Campus
Tel: 021 959 6964
Fax: 021 959 6231
Email: dutoitn@cput.ac.za

Library Services

CPUT Libraries offers you a welcoming and practical study environment; supporting independent and group working facilities; with access to print, digital and multimedia resources; and qualified staff that are dedicated to serve your needs. Library facilities are available at all campuses of CPUT.

MEMBERSHIP
If you are a registered student or staff member at CPUT, you may use any of the CPUT Libraries (by agreeing to abide by the rules and regulations of the CPUT and CPUT Libraries).

BOOK COLLECTIONS
Choose from our growing book collections, books that are focused on your academic subjects and studies. Book collections are arranged according to faculty content which makes it convenient to get all your information from one area in the library.

ELECTRONIC RESOURCES
Gives you access to hundreds of up-to-date journal articles for your studies and research that will not be found in books or on the Internet. These can even be accessed from home, work and places away from the libraries.

LEARNING COMMONS
An area filled with computers for internet access to relevant academic websites, typing of assignments, printing, scanning, CD-burning – particularly geared to your independent learning. Specialised Learning Commons are only in Bellville & Cape Town, but similar facilities are available at most of the other libraries.

STUDY FACILITIES
Choose to use the seminar rooms for working in groups, to hold discussions and make presentations, or use the quiet study areas for independent study.

RESEARCH INFORMATION SUPPORT CENTRES
Separate demarcated areas are available in Bellville and Cape Town for the exclusive use of postgraduate students and staff.

INFORMATION SKILLS TRAINING
Attend free training sessions that will empower you with skills to find information from various information tools and resources needed for your studies. Do not hesitate to contact your faculty or branch librarian for more information. CPUT Libraries cares about your safety and your learning needs, and all the services offered to you are provided within a framework of fair-minded and liberal policies as laid out by the University.

Therefore, you are encouraged to use the libraries to your maximum benefit. For more information, please visit the Libraries' comprehensive webpage: http://library.cput.ac.za

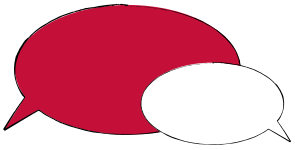
Financial aid

Bellville Financial Aid Office
Library Extension
Tel: 021 959 6371/6594/6349
Fax: 021 9596108

Cape Town Financial Aid Office
Administration Building, Level 5 (Entrance via Student Centre)
Tel: 021 460 3744/3856/3327
Fax: 021 460 3899

Wellington Campus
Administration Building, Room A19
Tel: 021 864 5218

Student counselling



Bellville Campus
Library Extension Building
Ground Floor
Tel: 021 959 6182 or 6269

Cape Town Campus
Administration Building
2nd Level, Room 2.700
Tel: 021 460 3237 or 3254

Mowbray Campus
Barkley Davies Building
Room 0.03
Tel: 021 680 1501 or 1574

Wellington Campus
Extension to the Administration Building
Tel: 021 864 5201 or 5206

COURSE INFORMATION

MINIMUM ADMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A National Senior Certificate (NSC) as certified by Umalusi with an achievement rating of 3 (Moderate Achievement: 40%–49%) or better in four recognised NSC 20-credit subjects, an achievement rating of 3 in the required official language at Home Language level and an achievement rating of 2 in the other required language on at least First Additional Language level; one of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans.

Specific minimum requirements for a course (the subjects required or recommended, achievement ratings, portfolio to be submitted, an interview in Cape Town or experience required) are indicated below.

Minimum admission requirements may be adjusted at the Dean's discretion, subject to the approval of the Faculty Board and the Senate of the University.

All candidates who comply with the minimum requirements are still subject to the selection procedures.

Rating Code	Rating	Marks %
7	Outstanding achievement	80-100
6	Meritorious achievement	70-79
5	Substantial achievement	60-69
4	Adequate achievement	50-59
3	Moderate achievement	40-49
2	Elementary achievement	30-39
1	Not achieved	0-29

For easy reference, the scale of achievement for the National Curriculum Statement Grades 10–12 (General) is supplied here.

For the minimum admission requirements for a senior certificate obtained before 2008, please contact the faculty office.

The following abbreviations of designated National Senior Certificate subjects are used in these pages. Designated subjects are indicated with an asterisk (*).

GROUP A: COMPULSORY NSC SUBJECTS

Languages (20 credits each)
Two official languages at Home and First Additional Language level:
A = Afrikaans Home Language OR Afrikaans First Additional Language
E = English Home Language OR English First Additional Language
AE = Afrikaans or English, Home or First additional language
FAL = First additional language AND
HL = Home Language (Any two of: Afrikaans, English, IsiNdebele, IsiXhosa, IsiZulu, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, SiSwati, Tshivenda or Xitsonga)

Mathematical Sciences (20 credits each)
M = Mathematics
ML = Mathematical Literacy

Human and Social studies (10 credits)
LO = Life Orientation

GROUP B: RECOGNISED NSC ELECTIVES

Agriculture (20 credits each)
AMP = Agricultural Management Practices
AS = Agricultural Science
AT = Agricultural Technology

Culture and Arts (20 credits each)
DANCE = Dance Studies
DES = Design
DRAMA = Dramatic Arts
MUS = Music
VA = Visual Arts

Business, Commerce and Management Studies (20 credits each)
ACC = Accounting
BUS = Business Studies
ECON = Economics

Engineering and Technology (20 credits each)
CIVT = Civil Technology
ELECT = Electrical Technology
MECHT = Mechanical Technology
EGD = Engineering Graphics and Design

Human and Social Studies (20 credits each)
GEO = Geography
HIS = History
RELS = Religion Studies

Physical, Mathematical, Computer and Life Sciences (20 credits each)
CAT = Computer Applications Technology
IT = Information Technology
LS = Life Sciences
PS = Physical Sciences

Services (20 credits each)
CS = Consumer Studies
HS = Hospitality Studies
TOUR = Tourism

MINIMUM ADMISSION REQUIREMENTS PER PROGRAMME

In some qualifications, applicants may be required to submit a motivational letter or essay explaining why they want to study a specific course. For applicants who have not completed subjects in the business, commerce and management category, subjects in other categories may be considered at the discretion of the Dean of the Faculty, on condition that the required achievement ratings have been met for all of the above programmes.

MINIMUM ADMISSION REQUIREMENTS PER PROGRAMME

In addition to the CPUT'S minimum admission requirements as stated above, the following table indicates both the required as well as the recommended subjects & ratings per academic programme.

REQUIRED/RECOMMENDED SUBJECTS AND RATINGS

PROGRAMME	ADMISSION REQUIREMENTS
Architectural Technology	**Required Senior Certificate subjects:** Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%) (English or Afrikaans), Maths Literacy 6 (meritorious achievement: 70% – 79%), Mathematics 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%) **Submission of prescribed portfolio:** In addition to the minimum admission requirements, applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work and attend a selection test.
Fashion Design	**Required Senior Certificate subjects:** Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%), (English or Afrikaans), Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%), Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%) **Recommended Senior Certificate subject:** Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%) **Submission of prescribed portfolio:** In addition to the minimum admission requirements, applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work.
Film & Video Technology	Candidates' matric results are assessed according to a points score counted by adding the rating of the best five subjects, as per the Achievement Levels detailed in the National Senior Certificate. Candidates must achieve a minimum of 20 points for matric (or provisionally for their mock matric exams) to qualify for consideration. Candidates must perform well in English, with a minimum of the equivalent of Achievement Level 4 (50 – 59%) for matric. All candidates must submit a letter of motivation together with their application form, or their applications will not be considered. Candidates will be considered for (but not guaranteed) interviews if they have a minimum score of 20 points for matric (or provisionally for their mock matric exams), plus a compelling letter of motivation which demonstrates adequate proficiency in English, expresses a compelling passion to become a film-maker, a willingness to work hard and a strong likelihood of success in the film industry. Candidates chosen for an interview will meet with lecturers, who gauge the candidate's ability to deal with the complexity of the theory component of the course, the candidate's drive and interest in film-making and the candidate's ability to work in a team environment. Candidates are allocated a score of between 1 and 5, with 1 being the lowest and 5 being the most likely to make it successfully through the course.

PROGRAMME	ADMISSION REQUIREMENTS
Graphic Design	**Required Senior Certificate subjects:** Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%), (English or Afrikaans), Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%), Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%). Recommended Senior Certificate subjects: Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%). **Submission of prescribed portfolio:** In addition to the minimum admission requirements, applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work.
Higher Certificate in Information & Communication Technology	**Required Senior Certificate subjects:** Home Language 50%, First Additional Language 40% Mathematics 40% or Maths Literacy 60% *One of the languages must be English These aforementioned compulsory subjects, plus 3 additional subjects (excluding Life Orientation) should amount to an academic point score of 30.0
Information & Communication Technology: Communication Networks	**Required Senior Certificate subjects:** Home Language 50%, First Additional Language 40% Mathematics 40% or Maths Literacy 60% *One of the languages must be English These aforementioned compulsory subjects, plus 3 additional subjects (excluding Life Orientation) should amount to an academic point score of 36.0
Information & Communication Technology: Multimedia Technology	**Required Senior Certificate subjects:** Home Language 50%, First Additional Language 40% Mathematics 40% or Maths Literacy 60% *One of the languages must be English These aforementioned compulsory subjects, plus 3 additional subjects (excluding Life Orientation) should amount to an academic point score of 36.0
Information & Communication Technology: Applications Development	**Required Senior Certificate subjects:** Home Language 50%, First Additional Language 40% Mathematics 40% or Maths Literacy 60% *One of the languages must be English These aforementioned compulsory subjects, plus 3 additional subjects (excluding Life Orientation) should amount to an academic point score of 36.0
Interior Design	**Required Senior Certificate subjects:** Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%), (English or Afrikaans), Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%) Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%) **Recommended Senior Certificate subject:** Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%) **Submission of prescribed portfolio:** In addition to the minimum admission requirements, applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work and attend a selection test.

PROGRAMME	ADMISSION REQUIREMENTS
Jewellery Design & Manufacture	**Required Senior Certificate subjects:** Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%), (English or Afrikaans), Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%) Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%) **Recommended Senior Certificate subject:** Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%). **Submission of prescribed portfolio:** In addition to the minimum admission requirements, applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work or attend a practical admission test on campus.
Journalism	**Admission Requirements** • An excellent command of English • At least a 'C' symbol or 5 points (60%-69%) in English Higher Grade • At least a 'D' symbol or 4 points (50%-59%) in the first additional language Higher Grade • A keen interest in local, national and international affairs will be an advantage • Applicants who meet the first three requirements will be invited to participate in a selection test **The test mainly comprises of English (knowledge of language and writing) and general knowledge** • Those who pass the test will be asked to come in for an interview
Photography	Admission requirements • A Matric Certificate (or, for Foreign Applicants, an Approved Equivalent) with a Bachelor's Pass • A D-symbol Average matric pass • A minimum score of 4 (50%-59%) in the Home Language and First Additional Language (one of which must be English) • Mathematics and/or Science and/or Art are considered plus points in an application, and will definitely stand the student in good stead • A strong (written) motivation for wanting to study photography (part of the Questionnaire to be filled out in the application process) • A duly signed note of approval from the applicant's sponsor(s)/parent(s)/guardian(s) of his/her choice of study field, and confirmation of availability of the requisite finances • Suitable candidates will be requested to attend an interview with lecturing staff and present a personal portfolio of 12 Photographs taken by themselves. In addition, they must present a written and illustrated document on their own selection of 'good' photographs selected from magazines.

PROGRAMME	ADMISSION REQUIREMENTS
Public Relations Management	Required Senior Certificate subjects: English 5 (substantial achievement: 60% - 69%), First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%), (English or Afrikaans), Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%), Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%). An achievement rating of at least 4 (50% – 59%) or better in four NSC 20-credit subjects from the designated subject list. Submission of a prescribed portfolio: In addition to the abovementioned admission requirements, applicants are also required to submit a portfolio of written work.
Surface Design	Required Senior Certificate subjects: Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%), (English or Afrikaans), Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%) Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%). Recommended Senior Certificate subject: Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%) Submission of prescribed portfolio: In addition to the minimum admission requirements, applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work.
Three Dimensional Design	Required Senior Certificate subjects: Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%),(English or Afrikaans), Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%) Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%) Recommended Senior Certificate subject: Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%) Submission of prescribed portfolio: In addition to the minimum admission requirements, applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work.
Town & Regional Planning	Required Senior Certificate subjects: Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), First Additional Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), (English or Afrikaans), Mathematics 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), Maths Literacy 5 (substantial achievement: 60% – 69%). Recommended Senior Certificate subjects: Geography 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%) Business Studies 4 (adequate achievement: 50% - 59%), Economics 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%), Tourism 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

RECOGNITION OF PRIOR LEARNING

What is RPL?

Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) is a process of identifying a student's knowledge and skills against a qualification or part thereof. The process involves the identification, mediation, assessment and acknowledgement of knowledge and skills obtained through informal, non-formal and/or formal learning. RPL provides an opportunity for a student to identify his/her learning, have it assessed and formally acknowledged. At CPUT, RPL can only be done against qualifications offered by CPUT. As a University of Technology, CPUT has two options for RPL namely "Access" or "Advanced Standing" or it can be a combination thereof.

Gaining access

If you have considerable work experience, but you don't meet the entry requirements of your chosen course, you may want to apply for entry into a qualification. This is referred to as "access". The RPL application is evaluated against the entry requirements of the qualification. If access is granted, the qualification on the lower level is not awarded.

Advanced standing

As an individual, you might have gained knowledge in specific areas. When compared to outcomes against a CPUT qualification, your knowledge might cover some subjects. You may apply for recognition of these subjects and this is called "Advanced Standing". Once the assessment is done, the University might give recognition for specific subjects, but not for the entire qualification. You will be required to complete outstanding subjects before the qualification is awarded. There are guidelines governing the minimum number of subjects for which advanced standing can be granted and you are required to register as a student and complete the outstanding subjects in order to be awarded the qualification by CPUT. This is in terms of the "residency clause", 50% of a programme has to be completed at the qualification awarding institution. The residency clause requires RPL applicants to complete at least 50% of subjects as a student with CPUT.

Applying for access into a BTech programme

If you want to apply for access into a B Tech degree programme, you will be evaluated against the National Diploma (ND), underpinning the B Tech. For example, if you want to do the B Tech in Business Administration and you are working as a marketing manager, you can apply for "advanced standing" against the National Diploma in Marketing to obtain access into the B Tech: Business Administration or the B Tech: Marketing. Indicate this clearly in your letter of motivation to the University.

Difference between exemptions & advanced standing

If you have successfully completed subjects with other institutions of Higher Education in South Africa, including the former technikons or professional institutions, you may apply for

"exemptions". This is handled by the Faculty Office. However, especially if you have worked for a number of years, you must include your academic record from these institutions as part of your RPL application.

Returning students

If you studied at either Peninsula or Cape Technikon more than 10 years ago, the validity of your subjects have lapsed (Point 4.2.2, page 12 CPUT Academic Rules and Regulations booklet for 2015). You may apply to the University to use the RPL process to complete your qualification. Candidates must provide the required information to the RPL Unit.

The closing date for applications for RPL is the 30th of June of every year.
Website: http//www.cput.ac.za/study/rpl
Contact: E-mail: rpl@cput.ac.za

International students

If you have a qualification from abroad, please have that qualification evaluated by the South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA) Unit for the Evaluation of Foreign Qualifications before you submit your RPL application - go to www.saqa.org.za. Once your qualification has been evaluated and you don't meet the entry requirements of the programme that you would like to do, or you want credit for what you already know, contact the RPL Unit for further advice.

Procedure for the evaluation of international qualifications

Students following the Cambridge System should note the following requirements:

Students must have:

- Passes in at least FIVE different subjects of the IGCSE and HIGCSE study levels, of which at least TWO are HIGCSE level subjects.
- A pass in the language which is the medium of instruction at the University (English)
- Specific pass grades: IGCSE A,B or C and HIGCSE 1,2 or 3.

In addition, students wishing to apply for either the M Tech or D Tech programmes, must have their qualifications evaluated by the South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA) prior to submitting their application forms (see below).

The onus is on the student to apply timeously to SAQA as this may take a bit longer.

Applicants who obtained qualifications from within Commonwealth countries, are exempt from SAQA evaluation procedures.

Other senior school qualifications will be reviewed on merit. In some instances, where the format of secondary school education is unfamiliar, students applying for National Diploma

programmes may also be asked to apply for SAQA evaluation prior to their acceptance. Applications towards a National Diploma do not require SAQA verification for students from Commonwealth Countries.
As from 1 August 2014, SAQA will only accept online applications for the evaluation of international qualifications. The application form and more information can be accessed from SAQA'S website viz http://www.saqa.org.za

You must include the following with your application:
All qualification documents i.e. the highest school certificate issued by the official examining body. Complete and legible transcripts of academic records in respect of all degrees or other higher education qualifications, together with the final certificates, preceding qualifications leading to any post graduate or other advanced qualification when the latter is submitted. Certificates in foreign languages should be submitted with sworn translations into English by an accredited translator.

Proof of payment using the submission number that was allocated to you.

Study permits for international students

As soon as an international student has received their letter of acceptance, they must apply to the SA Trade Representative closest to their home for a study permit if they are not a South African citizen. The study permit must indicate that the student has been granted permission to study at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology.

Submission of certificates

A National Senior Certificate or equivalent qualification must be submitted by the student upon enrolment at the beginning of the academic year. If this requirement is not met, the University will be forced to cancel the provisional acceptance.

Transfers from other institutions

Students who wish to transfer to CPUT from other institutions should note that priority will be given to the promotion of our own registered students and that transfers will only be considered in the event that there is a place on the course and subject to the following requirements:

- Applicants should complete the prescribed "Application for Admission" form and return it to CPUT, together with a certified copy of his/her Senior Certificate, identity document, academic record and the prescribed application fee.
- If the applicant is currently registered for a course at another university and wishes to transfer to CPUT, he/she should submit, together with the application form, a progress report (issued by the Registrar of the said University) which lists all the subjects passed by the applicant during the mid-year examinations.
- As soon as the year-end examination results are available, the applicant should submit a formal statement of these results to CPUT.

- All applications must be accompanied by a certificate of good conduct, or a letter of recommendation, from the applicant's present Head of Department.
- If the applicant is accepted, he/she shall be required to complete an "Application for Exemption" form and to pay the prescribed exemption fee, per subject, when he/she registers in January of the year of study. The form must be submitted to the Faculty Office which is situated on the 2nd floor in the Administration Building.

Documents to be attached to the application form:
- Official original academic record/transcript indicating percentages obtained as issued by the university where you studied.
- Syllabus of the subjects that you passed.
- Proof of payment
- A letter from the institution indicating the NQF level of the subject that was passed.
- If a subject was passed at a private institution, the applicant must submit a letter from that institution indicating its SAQA registration number.

NB: Applicants should note that certain rules may apply for e.g. maximum number of subjects, maximum number of years to complete qualification etc.

Admission

Application for admission
It is advisable that applications for admission to study at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology (CPUT) be submitted as early as possible to the campus of choice. For the various campuses see the application form and Guide to the completion of the application form. The application form is available on the University's website at www.cput.ac.za under the heading "Study at CPUT".

Closing date for applications
The closing date for applications for South African students is 30 September. The closing date for applications from International students is 31 August. Applicants will be informed of acceptance/non acceptance after 31 October.

Residence accommodation
Residence accommodation is subject to availability, in terms of the rules, and will be allocated at the campus where the student will be studying. Part-time students are not permitted to stay in the residences.

Student identity cards
Students are issued with identity cards at the beginning of each academic year. Presentation

of these cards when buying materials, booking of theatres, etc. may mean special discount rates. For security purposes, these cards must be presented on demand.

Bursaries & loans
Bursary and financial aid applications must be submitted to the Financial Aid Department which is situated on the 5th floor in the Administration Building, Cape Town Campus.

Class & examination fees
A class fees list is available from the Faculty Office. Examination fees are included in the class fees. After the initial payment in January, the remainder of the fees owing can be paid in monthly instalments from February to November (or over five months for semester subjects). Please note that these fees are subject to change every year and are not refundable.

Prescribed books
The titles and prices of prescribed text books that students must purchase are available at the book shops on the Bellville and Cape Town Campuses. Reference books and technical journals are available to students in the library. Students should not purchase books until instructed to do so by the subject lecturers.

Co-operative education
Co-operative Education is an educational model designed to promote individual career development. The basic principle of Co-operative Education is that personal growth and professional development are best achieved by an educational method that combines classroom learning with experiential learning, i.e. practical work experience.

Work Integrated Learning is part of Co-Operation Education and is a partnership between the student, the University and the employer. The Work Integrated Learning programme is planned by the University in co-operation with employers and is jointly monitored by both parties. Although the University undertakes to assist students in obtaining suitable Work Integrated Learning placements, the onus is on the student to find employment. The employer must be accredited by the University for purposes of Work Integrated Learning. A Work Integrated Learning agreement creates a separate contract between the employer and the student.

Hours of tuition
Full-time classes commence at 08:30 until approximately 16:00. Note that examinations may be set after hours up to 20:00.

Class attendance
Continued acceptance of a student's registration for full-time qualifications depends, amongst other things, upon sustained academic progress and regular and punctual attendance.

Unsatisfactory progress and attendance may result in the suspension of a student.

Medium of tuition
The medium of tuition is English, except for the Education Qualifications at the Wellington Campus which are offered in Afrikaans. Afrikaans and Xhosa speaking students may be offered support, which may be by way of language-specific tutorial groups, the provision of notes and the setting of tests, assignments and examinations in the first language of the student.

Library
The CPUT Library is part of the Cape Library Cooperative (CALICO) that gives access to four million books and numerous magazines in various libraries in the Peninsula. In addition, the library offers excellent facilities for study and provision is made for students who wish to do research work. All students automatically become members of the library.

Student counselling
CPUT offers a counselling service by registered psychologists to students, prospective students and their parents. Prospective students are individually interviewed and assisted to make a responsible career choice. Parents are welcome to attend such interviews. Career counselling may also include complete psychometric evaluation.

Prospective students and registered students, who have problems regarding career choice, the planning of their qualification or choice of subjects, can make an appointment at:

Cape Town Campus: Tel: +27 +21 460 3252/3/4

Assessment
Assessment takes place throughout the year with final assessments in June and/or November each year and a pass mark of 50% must be obtained in all subjects. In each module and subject, the various assessments contribute towards the final assessment mark.

The assessment mark for a subject will be determined by a student's performance in tests, assignments and in accordance with the requirements for each qualification.

Indemnity
A student involved in any university-related activity, whether academic, sporting, cultural or relating to experiential or practical training, shall indemnify the Cape Peninsula University of Technology (herein after referred to as CPUT) and its staff and/or any co-operative partner and its staff, or their representatives against any claim of whatsoever nature which such students, his/her executors or assigns may now or in the future have, arising from any injury or the sequelae thereto and which may be instituted against CPUT as a result of such university-

related activities; and against any liability that may arise from an action or omission by such student. A student, furthermore, shall undertake not to hold CPUT or any of its employees responsible for any damage of whatsoever nature that such student may sustain during or arising from any university-related activity, irrespective of whether it occurs on or off the premises of CPUT.

International students
International students should consult the International Student Guide (or visit our website: www.cput.ac.za) for details regarding their application to study at the University, e.g. study permit, fees structure etc.

Research
The Cape Peninsula University of Technology actively promotes research of an applied nature, believing that a strong research activity is a necessary feature of any institution offering higher education. Students are sensitised to the importance of information and library skills during their first three years of study, introduced to research methodologies in the degree year, and provided with guidance and facilities to undertake independent research for further studies.

The Guide to Postgraduate Studies is available on the CPUT website: http://www.cput.ac.za

PART-TIME STUDY
Hours of tuition
Some of the qualifications described in this handbook are offered on a part-time basis. Lectures are scheduled from Mondays to Thursdays between 17:15 and 20:50. The object of this is to enable persons who do not have the privilege of studying on a full-time basis to acquire tertiary qualifications. The information contained in this handbook generally also applies to part-time students.

Admission requirements
The admission requirements are the same as for full-time students. As a rule, accommodation in a university residence is not available to part-time students.

SUBJECTS: GUIDE TO TERMINOLOGY

CORE SUBJECT: Core subjects form a central part of the programme. Inclusion of such subjects in a curriculum is compulsory.

CO-REQUISITE: A co-requisite subject is one for which a student must be registered together (i.e. concurrently) with another specified subject. For example, Maths 1 must be taken in the same semester as Mechanics 1 (unless the student has already passed it), because Mechanics 1 relies on content given in Maths 1.

PRE-REQUISITE: A pre-requisite subject is one which a student must have passed in order to gain admission to another subject. For example, Maths 1 is a pre-requisite for Maths 2.

EXPOSURE: An exposure subject is one which a student must have completed, but does not have to have passed in order to gain admission to another subject. For example, Maths 2 is an exposure subject for Thermodynamics 2.

ELECTIVE SUBJECT: This is a subject required for degree purposes (e.g. to make up the required number of credits), but in which the choice of subject is left to the student, and is conditional upon timetable constraints.

Subjects ending in an 'X' are Extended curriculum subjects.

FACULTY OF INFORMATICS & DESIGN QUALIFICATION STRUCTURE

National Diploma (ND)

Three years full-time study leads to the award of a National Diploma. National Diploma studies constitute complete study programmes, meet specific business needs and serve as recognised exit levels.

Bachelor of Technology (BTech)

The National Diploma leads to the Baccalaureus in Technology (B Tech). Admission to these one-year programmes (full-time) may be subject to additional minimum admission requirements, which may include an average pass mark of 60% in the third year of the National Diploma programme. Most B Tech programmes are also offered on a part-time basis over two years.

Master and Doctor of Technology (MTech and DTech)

The Cape Peninsula University of Technology actively promotes research of an applied nature, believing that a strong research activity is a necessary feature of any institution offering higher education. Students are sensitised to the importance of information and library skills during their first three year of study, introduced to research methodologies in the degree year and provided with guidance and facilities to undertake independent research for further studies. Masters and Doctors of Technology may be obtained either through full or part-time study.

LIST OF PROGRAMMES OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF INFORMATICS & DESIGN

DEPARTMENT: APPLIED DESIGN

FASHION DESIGN
ND: Fashion Design (Extended)
ND: Fashion Design
B Tech: Fashion Design

GRAPHIC DESIGN
ND: Graphic Design (Extended)
ND: Graphic Design
B Tech: Graphic Design
M Tech: Graphic Design
D Tech: Graphic Design

INDUSTRIAL DESIGN
ND: Three Dimensional Design (Extended)
ND: Three Dimensional Design
B Tech: Industrial Design
M Tech: Industrial Design

JEWELLERY DESIGN
ND: Jewellery Design & Manufacture (Extended)
ND: Jewellery Design & Manufacture
B Tech: Jewellery Design & Manufacture

SURFACE DESIGN
ND: Surface Design (Extended)
ND: Surface Design
B Tech: Surface Design

DESIGN FOUNDATION YEAR

M & D TECH DESIGN

DEPARTMENT: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY & INTERIOR DESIGN

ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY
ND: Architectural Technology (Extended)
ND: Architectural Technology
B Tech: Architectural Technology
M Tech: Architectural Technology

INTERIOR DESIGN
ND: Interior Design (Extended)
ND: Interior Design
B Tech: Interior Design
M Tech: Interior Design

DEPARTMENT: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Higher Certificate in Information & Communication Technology
Diploma in Information & Communication Technology: Communication Networks
Diploma in Information & Communication Technology: Multimedia Applications
Diploma in Information & Communication Technology: Applications Development
B Tech: Information Technology
B Tech: Multimedia Technology
M Tech: Information Technology
M Tech: Business Information Systems
D Tech: Information Technology
D Tech: Informatics

MEDIA DEPARTMENT

FILM & VIDEO TECHNOLOGY
ND: Film & Video Technology

JOURNALISM
ND: Journalism
B Tech: Journalism

PHOTOGRAPHY
ND: Photography
B Tech: Photography

PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT
ND: Public Relations Management
B Tech: Public Relations Management
M Tech: Public Relations Management (Course Driven degree)
M Tech: Public Relations Management (Research-based degree)

DEPARTMENT: TOWN & REGIONAL PLANNING

ND: Town & Regional Planning
B Tech: Town & Regional Planning
M Tech: Town & Regional Planning

FACULTY EXCLUSION RULES AND PROCEDURES

Each qualification that is offered in the Faculty has its own specific promotion and academic exclusion rules. These rules can be found under each qualification listed in this Hand Book.

Maximum time allowed to complete a programme

The maximum time allowed to complete a programme shall be double the minimum completion duration, for example, 6 years for a 3-year qualification. In addition, students would be given a maximum of one chance to repeat a semester, year, subjects, course or module. In other words, repeaters are limited to one repeat.

Maximum time allowed for the respective qualifications:

Extended Curriculum Programme:	7 Years
National Diploma:	6 Years
B Tech degree:	4 Years
M Tech degree:	5 Years
D Tech degree:	6 Years

Where a student has only one or two subjects remaining to completion and is nearing the maximum number of years for registration, he/she may apply, with appropriate motivation, to the Dean's office for extension of the period of registration for an additional year. Normal appeal procedures will also be applied.

THE GENERAL EXCLUSION PROCESS

Students' final assessment results are obtained from the Assessment & Graduation Centre at the end of the academic year. A Departmental Committee, consisting of lecturers, then conducts a marks review. It makes recommendations on final mark adjustments and identifies students for exclusion based on the criteria of each respective programme.

A general letter from the Department informs the student that he/she has been excluded from the programme. This letter gives the deadline for appeals and details of the steps to be taken for readmission to the programme. It also details the reasons for exclusion and identifies the exclusion rules that have been contravened. Students who have been excluded are blocked from registering by the Faculty Office and will not be able to register for any subjects in the following year.

Students may appeal against exclusion on the basis of extenuating circumstances (e.g. a death in the family or illness), or any other extenuating factors that have bearing on the

student's academic performance, by writing a letter to the Head of Department. This letter of appeal must be accompanied by a full academic record and other supporting documentation and must be submitted to the Secretary of the Department by Friday of the first week that the University opens for a new year.

A Departmental Appeals Committee will evaluate the appeal. It will take into account the overall academic record of the student and the reasons provided for poor performance. Based on this and input from subject lecturers, a decision is made on whether to readmit the student into the programme or not. Sometimes certain restrictions will be placed on the student as a condition for readmission. Furthermore in some cases the Department will request certain actions from the student as a condition for readmission e.g. attendance of counselling sessions. A written reply to the student's appeal will be given by the Appeals Committee within seven working days after submission and must be collected from the Secretary of the respective department.

If the student does not agree or accept the answer from the Appeals Committee, the student may then appeal to the Dean of the Faculty of Informatics & Design.

The Faculty reserves the right to exclude a student who has been readmitted on appeal, but who has not met the conditions of the Appeals Committee.

DEPARTMENT OFFICE-BEARERS

Position	Name	Telephone	E-mail
Head of Department	Mr BMH Verveckken	021 460 8308	verveckkenb@cput.ac.za
Dept Secretary	Ms M Gordon	021 460 7221	Gordonm@cput.ac.za

ACADEMIC STAFF (PERMANENT)

Name	Position	Qualifications
HEAD OF DEPARTMENT		
Mr BMH Verveckken	Head of Department	M Prod Development, NHIBS
SENIOR LECTURERS		
Ms MJ Bezuidenhout	Senior Lecturer	M Fine Art (Cape Town), BA Fine Art (Cape Town), Ad Dip.
Ms J Brewis	Senior Lecturer	MPhil Educat (Cape Town), NHD: Fine Art, ND: Fine Art
Ms V Konstandakellis	Senior Lecturer	B Tech: Jewel. Des., ND: Jewel. Des.
Ms DM Kimani	Senior Lecturer	MFA (Design), PgDM (Advert & Market), B.Ed (Fine Art)
Ms JLD Purcell Van Graan	Senior Lecturer	M Fine Art (Cape Town), BA Fine Art (Cape Town), BA (Hons)
Mr BRA Snaddon	Senior Lecturer	MPhil Educat (Cape Town), B Tech: Graph.Des, ND: Graph Des.
Ms AG Vlok	Senior Lecturer	Masters: Design, NHD: Cloth. Man, ND: Cloth. Man,
LECTURERS		
Ms VE Barnes	Lecturer	M Tech: Design, NHD: Indust. Des, ND: Indust. Des., HDHET
Mr S Beukman	Lecturer	ND: Graph. Des.
Mr JC Coetzee	Lecturer	NHD: Photog ND: Fine Art, ND: Photog.
Mr W Coughlan	Lecturer	ND: Graph. Des.
Ms LC Desai	Lecturer	B Tech: Graph Des, ND: Graph. Des.,
Mr LC Franciscus	Lecturer	B Tech: Graph. Des, ND: Graph. Des.
Mr R G Futerman	Lecturer	M Tech: Design, B Tech: Indust. Design, ND: Indust. Des.,
Ms PVA George	Lecturer	M Tech: Design, B Tech: Fine Art, ND: Fine Art,

Name	Position	Qualifications
Ms C Janse Van Rensburg	Lecturer	B Tech: Jewel. Des, ND: Jewel. Des.
Ms M Lubbe	Lecturer	B Tech: Text. Des, ND: Text. Des.
Mr A Meyer	Lecturer	NHD: Fine Art, NHD: Post School Education, ND: Fine Art
Mr D Molenaar	Lecturer	M Tech: Indust.Des, BTech:Indust.Des, ND: Indust. Des.
Ms A Morris	Lecturer	M Tech: Graph Des, B Tech: Graph Des, ND: Graph Des.
Mr JAS Myburgh	Lecturer	ND: Fashion
Mr J Van Niekerk	Lecturer	BTech: Indust. Des, M.D.D.O.P, ND: Indust. Des., Pg Dip (HE),
Ms M Lecanides-Arnott	Lecturer	MTech Design, BA (Fine Art) (Cape Town), Assessor & Moderator (NQF)
Ms D Steyn	Lecturer	MPhil (Higher Education Studies) (Cape Town), HDE(Pg.Sec.), (Cape Town), BA Art (Cape Town)
Ms T Weideman	Lecturer	NHD Bus. Manag, ND: Art & Des., ND: Cloth. Des., Cert. in Educational Technology
Mr R Futerman	Lecturer	D Tech: Design, M Tech: Design, ND: Three Dimensional Des
Mr Z Damba	Junior Lecturer	B Tech: Graphic Design, ND: Graph. Des.
Ms C Hugo	Junior Lecturer	ND: Graphic Design, Diploma In Digital Publishing, Marco Media Trainer Certificate, Train the trainer, Post Grad Diploma in Education, Multimedia Diploma, HDHET, CHEC (teaching and learning), CHEC (assessment in Higher Education)
Ms S Papa	Junior Lecturer	BTech Fashion Des, ND Fashion
Mr C Finnan	Junior Lecturer	ND: Graph.Des.
Ms B Kolisi	Junior Lecturer	M Tech Design, B Tech: Quality, ND: Fash. Des.
Ms MO Van Wyk	Junior Lecturer	M Tech: Design, B Tech: Jewel. Des, ND: Jewel. Des.

QUALIFICATIONS OFFERED

Undergrad / Postgrad	Qualification Type	Qual Code	Qualification Name	Minimum Duration (Years)	Work-Integrated Learning
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDFASH	ND: Fashion Design	3 Years	N/A
Undergrad	Extended Curriculum	NDFDFX	ND: Fashion Design (Extended Curriculum)	4 Years	N/A
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTFASH	B Tech: Fashion Design	1 Year	N/A

Undergrad / Postgrad	Qualification Type	Qual Code	Qualification Name	Minimum Duration (Years)	Work-Integrated Learning
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDGDSN	ND: Graphic Design	3 Years	N/A
Undergrad	Extended Curriculum	NDGDSX	ND: Graphic Design (Extended Curriculum)	4 Years	N/A
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTGDSN	B Tech: Graphic Design	1 Year	N/A
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTGDSR	M Tech: Graphic Design	1 Year	N/A
Post Graduate	D Tech Degree	DTGDSR	D Tech: Graphic Design	2 Years	N/A
Undergrad	National Diploma	ND3DDS	ND: Three Dimensional Design	3 Years	N/A
Undergrad	Extended Curriculum	ND3DFX	ND: Three Dimensional Design (Extended Curriculum)	4 Years	N/A
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTIDDN	B Tech: Industrial Design	1 Year	N/A
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTINDR	M Tech: Industrial Design	1 Year	N/A
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDJEWD	ND: Jewellery Design & Manufacture	3 Years	N/A
Undergrad	Extended Curriculum	NDJDFX	ND: Jewellery Design & Manufacture (Extended Curriculum)	4 Years	N/A
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTJEWD	B Tech: Jewellery Design & Manufacture	1 Year	N/A
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDSURD	ND: Surface Design	3 Years	N/A
Undergrad	Extended Curriculum	NDSDFX	ND: Surface Design (Extended Curriculum)	4 Years	N/A
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTSURD	B Tech: Surface Design	1 Year	N/A
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTDESR	M Tech: Design	1 Year	N/A
Post Graduate	D Tech Degree	DTDESR	D Tech: Design	2 Years	N/A

DESIGN FOUNDATION YEAR

(Foundational first-year of study in the extended curriculum programmes in Design)

CAPE TOWN CAMPUS

The Design Foundation Year is the first-year of study of the approved Extended Curriculum Programmes in the National Diploma in Design, which are completed in a minimum of four years. This foundation year of study serves four of the Design programmes situated on the Cape Town campus. Students who take part in the Design Foundation Year are registered in the extended curriculum programmes for one of the following four design disciplines: Fashion, Industrial, Jewellery or Surface design. The aim of the Design Foundation Year is to give beginning students a solid grounding in the study of Design.

The target group for this foundation year of study consists mostly of prospective students who show potential for study in design, but who are not ready for entry into the regular first-year of study in the Design discipline of choice. Preference is given to under-prepared students from educationally and economically disadvantaged backgrounds.

FOUNDATION COURSE STRUCTURE AND SUBJECT AREAS

The Design Foundation Year also serves as a diagnostic year of study as it has a complex, integrated, multidisciplinary curriculum with “core ideas” in design being taught through the specific content of all seven of the design disciplines on offer in the Faculty of Informatics and Design (Architectural Technology, Fashion, Graphic, Industrial, Interior, Jewellery and Surface Design).

The practical component of the course consists of the studio-based subjects of Drawing, Two-Dimensional Design and Three-Dimensional Design. The theoretical component of the course consists of two subjects Design Communication Studies, and Professional Practice.

SUBJECT SUMMARY

1. STUDIO-BASED DESIGN SUBJECTS AND DRAWING

1.1 Drawing

Preparatory Studies 1 (PRP1OMX)
Design Studies 1 (DES1OMX)
Drawing for Design 1 (DRA10MX)
Jewellery Drawing 1 (JDR1OMX

Prerequisites: entrance portfolio/test/interview for study in first-year in design

Drawing is fundamental to design and is embedded in all the design subjects as part of the design process. Drawing is also taught as a separate subject that is divided into figure drawing and object drawing. These two components are equally weighted and

each accounts for 50% of the final mark in drawing. Through figure and object drawing students are encouraged to develop observational, perceptual and conceptual skills and to carry these into the study of their design subjects.

1.2 Two-dimensional design

1.2.1 Fashion Design (NDFDFX)

Applied Clothing Technology 1 (ACT1OAX)
Applied Clothing Technology 1 (ACT1OBX)

Prerequisites: entrance portfolio/test/interview for study in first-year in design

Students will be introduced to basic patternmaking and garment construction techniques in this subject. They start by designing a pattern for a bag, which is constructed in fabric, making use of an industrial sewing machine and hand sewing techniques for decoration. The next fashion design project begins with stylistic analysis of the garment designs of a well-established international or local fashion designer. The students then develop a concept board with their own range of garments, based on their understanding of their chosen designer's garments. Referring to the concept board, the students then do detailed illustrations of their garment designs in colour pencil crayon.

1.2.2 Surface Design (NDSDFX)

Surface Design 1 (SDE1OSX)
Surface Design Technology 1 (SDT10SX)

Prerequisites: entrance portfolio/test/interview for study in first-year in design

The students will be introduced to the colour wheel and colour theory after which they will construct and paint their own colour wheel. The students will learn to understand and use principles of design through pattern. They will do projects using repeat pattern in black and white and in colour, applying what they have learnt from their colour theory to their surface design projects. Researching the concept of the cultural use of colour and pattern, students will also use and explore different printing techniques such as: block printing and silkscreen printing and how these are applied in the textile industry.

GRAPHIC DESIGN COMPONENT

In addition to the subjects for which the students are registered, a Graphic Design component forms part of the two-dimensional design subject of the foundation course. This is essential to the complex, integrated, multidisciplinary curriculum and to the teaching and learning in the introduction to the study of two-dimensional design.

In the Graphic Design component students learn to communicate ideas through the visual language of design using various techniques, colour and a range of different graphic media. They explore the basic principles of working within a given format, composition, use of negative spaces, simplification, and stylization, all of which are "core ideas" in the design process that are essential to all of the Design disciplines. There is a project dealing with

the principles of typography and meaning, which is then developed into a more complex project dealing with typography and image. Students will also learn how to use images to communicate a story or event and explore illustration.

1.3 Three-dimensional design

1.3.1 Industrial Design (3-D Design) (ND3DFX)

Design studies 1 (DNT1OSX)
Technology 1 (TEC1OSX)

Prerequisites: entrance portfolio/test/interview for study in first-year in design

Students will learn to develop products in different materials applying the design process, consisting of self-research, development of concept drawings, the use of technical drawings, and 3D prototypes. They will create a positive 'pattern' for a mould that could be used for mass production. For this they design and make a cardboard construction for a low relief ceramic tile suitable for use as a border pattern. They will design and construct 3D slot-together structures, making puzzles for children out of Corex, a plastic laminated card. Students will then do a packaging exercise, constructing a box and lid in cardboard from accurate technical drawings with strict specifications.

1.3.2 Jewellery Design (NDJIDFX)

Jewellery Design 1 (JED1OSX)
Jewellery Techniques 1 (JTQ1OSX)

Prerequisites: entrance portfolio/test/interview for study in first-year in design

Students will be introduced to drawing techniques used in Jewellery Design such as working to scale, using a grid and making carefully rendered presentation drawings in pencil and in colour using colour pencil crayons. They will develop different jewellery designs and manufacture these using appropriate technology. Students will learn to carve, work in relief, cut brass plates, recycle found materials and use various wire work techniques. They will also make use of lost wax casting and learn to smelt, pour, sand and file metals such as copper and silver.

ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY AND INTERIOR DESIGN COMPONENTS

In addition to the subjects for which the students are registered, Interior Design and Architectural Technology components form part of the three-dimensional design subject of the foundation course. This is essential to the complex, integrated, multidisciplinary curriculum and to the teaching and learning in the introduction to the study of three-dimensional design.

In the Interior design component students will learn to research and make use of concept boards to develop and clarify ideas for designing an interior space with a specific function and visual identity. They will then learn to draw accurate plans, sections and isometric projections and to use these to construct a scale model of their design. Students will be

required to give a verbal presentation of their project to lecturers and peers, the purpose of which is to explain the concepts informing their work.

In the Architectural Technology component students are introduced to the principles of architectural design in particular the concept of designing buildings for a specific purpose within a given spatial context. Students will design an exterior structure for a specific site that meets special requirements as set out in a brief. They will have to consider the materials and technology when planning the design. Students will learn to draw scale plans. They will use these plans to describe their understanding of construction methods, using the plans to build scale models of their designs. Students will be required to give a verbal presentation of their project to lecturers and peers, the purpose of which is to explain the concepts informing their work.

2. THEORY SUBJECTS

2.1 Design Communication Studies

Surface and Design Studies I (SDS1OSX)
Theory of Clothing 1 (TOC1OSX)
History of Art 1 (HIS1OSX)
History of Art and Jewellery Design 1 (JET1OAX)

Prerequisites: entrance portfolio/test/interview for study in first-year in design

The subject of Design Communication Studies consists of the following components: History of Art and Design; Design and Visual Literacy; Communication and Literacy (including language skills).

2.1.1 History of Art and Design

This subject will be addressed on a theme-basis offering first-time History of Art and Design students a basic overview. Segments from the 1st year History of Art and Design course will be included and students will be required to attend certain core lectures, which will be supplemented by tutorials. The analysis of design products is emphasised.

2.1.2 Design and Visual Literacy

This component of the course concentrates on introducing students to design and visual literacy. This introduction will be developed through various visual presentations, written and spoken exercises and assessments.

2.1.3 Communication and Literacy (including Language skills)

This section of the course introduces students to academic reading and writing, as well as the skills needed to research information and present this information in a coherent and effective written and verbal format. Students have the opportunity to request assistance with any of their written and oral assignments. Where remedial help is needed this will be given. Furthermore, an assessable language component that counts for 30% of the final mark is integrated into all theory assignment.

2.2 Professional Practice

Surface Design Practice 1 (SDP1OSX)
Business Studies 1 (BUS1OSX)
Business Studies 1 (BST1OSX)
Business Studies 1 (JET1OBX)

Prerequisites: entrance portfolio/test/interview for study in first-year in design
The subject of Professional Practice consists of the following components: Current Awareness; Information Literacy (including computer skills), Professional Development (life skills) and Numeracy Skills.

2.2.1 Current Awareness

Design and visual literacy classes will be augmented by outings and visits to exhibitions. In addition to this, students will have the opportunity to engage in current design discourse through a programme that includes guest lecturers in the field.

2.2.2 Professional Development (life skills)

This course will include various life skills and study skills workshops. These will help students develop the kinds of individual and academic competencies and attitudes needed on a first year academic level.

2.2.3 Information Literacy (including computer skills)

The information literacy component will familiarise students with making use of the library for research purposes, which is essential for the studio-based Design and theory subjects. Included is an introduction in the use of different research databases and basic computer literacy will be offered in order to familiarise students with the current frameworks of technology. This knowledge will be further developed into word processing and presentation package skills (MS Word, Excel, Power-Point and Photoshop) in order to empower students to successfully utilise these resources.

2.2.4 Numeracy skills

The Numeracy skills course consists of four modules designed to give the students a practical understanding of Numeracy as it relates to various facets of life. The modules include a variety of topics such as areas and volumes, data processing and probabilities, as well as financial aspects such as interest rates, inflation and exchange rates.

ND: FASHION DESIGN (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDFDFX

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
FOUNDATION YEAR										
0	Year	DES10SX	Design Studies 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	BUS10SX	Business Studies 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	ACT10MX	Applied Clothing Technology 1A	C		5A	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	ACT10BX	Two-Dimensional Design 1A	C		5A	22	0.188	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	ACT10AX	Three-Dimensional Design 1A	C		5A	22	0.187	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	TOC10SX	Theory of Clothing 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
FIRST YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
1	Year	DST100S	Design Studies 1	C	DES10SX	5B	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	BUT102S	Business Studies 1	C	BUS10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	ACT100S	Applied Clothing Technology 1	C	ACT10MX	5B	45	0.375	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	TCL100S	Theory of Clothing 1	C	TOC10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
SECOND YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
2	Year	DST200S	Design Studies 2	C	DST100S	5	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	BUT202S	Business Studies 2	C	BUT102S	5	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ACT200S	Applied Clothing Technology 2	C	ACT100S	5	45	0.375	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	TCL200S	Theory of Clothing 2	C	TCL100S	5	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
THIRD YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
3	Year	DST300S	Design Studies 3	C	DST200S	6	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	BUT300S	Business Studies 3	C	BUT202S	6	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	ACT300S	Applied Clothing Technology 3	C	ACT200S	6	45	0.375	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	TCL300S	Theory of Clothing 3	C	TCL200S	6	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 12

Academic exclusion rules & appeal procedure

The academic exclusion rules and appeal procedure are exactly the same as that applicable to the mainstream National Diploma programme.

ND: GRAPHIC DESIGN (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDGDSX

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
FOUNDATION YEAR										
0	Year	PGP10SX	Professional Graphic Design Practice 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	HOA10SX	History of Art & Design 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	CMD10SX	Communication Design 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	DST10SX	Design Techniques 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	GDD10SX	Graphic Design Drawing 1A	C		5A	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
FIRST YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
1	Year	PGP100S	Professional Graphic Design Practice 1	C	PGP10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	HOA100S	History of Art & Design 1	C	HOA10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CMD100S	Communication Design 1	C	CMD10SX	5B	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	DGT100S	Design Techniques 1	C	DST10SX	5B	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	GDD100S	Graphic Design Drawing 1	C	GDD10SX	5B	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
SECOND YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
2	Year	PGP200S	Professional Graphic Design Practice 2	C	PGP100S	5	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	HGD200S	History & Theory of Graphic Design 2	C	HOA100S	5	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CMD200S	Communication Design 2	C	CMD100S	5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	DGT200S	Design Techniques 2	C	DGT100S	5	22.4	0.187	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	GDD200S	Graphic Design Drawing 2	C	GDD100S	5	13.5	0.113	Continuous	Yes
THIRD YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
3	Year	PGP300S	Professional Graphic Design Practice 3	C	PGP200S	6	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	HGD300S	History & Theory of Graphic Design 3	C	HGD200S	6	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	CMD300S	Communication Design 3	C	CMD200S	6	45	0.375	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DGT300S	Design Techniques 3	C	DGT200S	6	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	GDD300S	Graphic Design Drawing 3	C	GDD200S	6	18	0.075	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 15

Academic exclusion rules & appeal procedure

The academic exclusion rules and appeal procedure are exactly the same as that applicable to the mainstream National Diploma programme.

ND: THREE-DIMENSIONAL DESIGN (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

QUALIFICATION CODE: ND3DFX

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
FOUNDATION YEAR										
0	Year	DNT10SX	Design Studies 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	DRA10SX	Drawing for Design 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	HIS10SX	History of Art 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	BST10SX	Business Studies 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	TEC10SX	Technology 1A	C		5A	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
FIRST YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
1	Year	DNT100S	Design Studies 1	C	DNT10SX	5B	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	DFD100S	Drawing for Design 1	C	DRA10SX	5B	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	KUN100S	History of Art 1	C	HIS10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	BUT101S	Business Studies 1	C	BST10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	TCN101S	Technology 1	C	TEC10SX	5B	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
SECOND YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
2	Year	HIN200S	History of Industrial Design 2	C	KUN100S	5	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	DSM200S	Design Media 2	C	DFD100S	5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PDE200S	Product Design 2	C	DNT100S	5	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	BUT201S	Business Studies 2	C	BUT101S	5	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	TCN201S	Technology 2	C	TCN101S	5	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
THIRD YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
3	Year	HIN300S	History of Industrial Design 3	C	HIN200S	6	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DSM300S	Design Media 3	C	DSM200S	6	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PDE300S	Product Design 3	C	PDE200S	6	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	BUT301S	Business Studies 3	C	BUT201S	6	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	TCN300S	Technology 3	C	TCN201S	6	9	0.150	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 15

Academic exclusion rules & appeal procedure

The academic exclusion rules and appeal procedure are exactly the same as that applicable to the mainstream National Diploma programme.

ND: JEWELLERY DESIGN & MANUFACTURE (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDJDFX

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
FOUNDATION YEAR										
0	Year	JED10SX	Jewellery Design 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
0	Year	JDR10SX	Jewellery Drawing 1A	C		5A	18	0.150	Contin	Yes
0	Year	JTQ10SX	Jewellery Techniques 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
0	Year	JET10MX	Jewellery Theory 1A	C		5A			Contin	Yes
0	Year	JET10BX	Business Studies 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
0	Year	JET10AX	Metallurgy 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
FIRST YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
1	Year	JED100S	Jewellery Design 1	C	JED10SX	5B	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
1	Year	JDR100S	Jewellery Drawing 1	C	JDR10SX	5B	18	0.150	Contin	Yes
1	Year	JTQ100S	Jewellery Techniques 1	C	JTQ10SX	5B	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
1	Year	JTH100M	Jewellery Theory 1	C	JET10MX	5B			Contin	Yes
1	Year	JTH100A	Metallurgy	C	JET10AX	5B	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
1	Year	JTH100B	Business Studies 1	C	JET10BX	5B	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
SECOND YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
2	Year	JED200S	Jewellery Design 2	C	JED100S	5	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
2	Year	JDR200S	Jewellery Drawing 2	C	JDR100S	5	18	0.150	Contin	Yes
2	Year	JTQ200S	Jewellery Techniques 2	C	JTQ100S	5	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
2	Year	JTH100M	Jewellery Theory 2	C	JET100M	5			Contin	Yes
2	Year	JTH200A	History of Jewellery	C		5	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
2	Year	JTH200B	Business Studies 2	C	JTH100B	5	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
THIRD YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
3	Year	JED300S	Jewellery Design 3	C	JED200S	6	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
3	Year	JDR300S	Jewellery Drawing 3	C	JDR200S	6	18	0.150	Contin	Yes
3	Year	JTQ300S	Jewellery Techniques 3	C	JTQ200S	6	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
3	Year	JTH300M	Jewellery Theory 3	C	JTH200M	6			Contin	Yes
3	Year	JTH300A	Gemmology Practical 3	C	JTH300A	6	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
3	Year	JTH300B	Gemmology Theory 3	C	JTH300B	6	9	0.075	Contin	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 12

Academic exclusion rules & appeal procedure

The academic exclusion rules and appeal procedure are exactly the same as that applicable to the mainstream National Diploma programme.

ND: SURFACE DESIGN (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDSDFX

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
FOUNDATION YEAR										
0	Year	PRP10SX	Preparatory Studies 1A	C		5A	18	0.150	Contin	Yes
0	Year	SDP10SX	Surface Design Practice 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
0	Year	SDT10SX	Surface Design Technology 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
0	Year	SDE10SX	Surface Design 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
0	Year	SDS10SX	Surface & Design Studies 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
FIRST YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
1	Year	SDP100S	Surface Design Practice 1	C	SDP10SX	5B	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
1	Year	SDT100S	Surface Design Technology 1	C	SDT10SX	5B	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
1	Year	SDE100S	Surface Design 1	C	SDE10SX	5B	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
1	Year	PYS100S	Preparatory Studies 1	C	PRP10SX	5B	18	0.150	Contin	Yes
1	Year	SDS100S	Surface & Design Studies 1	C	SDS10SX	5B	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
SECOND YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
2	Year	SDT200S	Surface Design Technology 2	C	SDT100S	5	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
2	Year	SDS200S	Surface & Design Studies 2	C	SDS100S	5	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
2	Year	PYS200S	Preparatory Studies 2	C	PYS100S	5	18	0.150	Contin	Yes
2	Year	SDP200S	Surface Design Practice 2	C	SDP100S	5	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
2	Year	SDE200S	Surface Design 2	C	SDE100S	5	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
THIRD YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
3	Year	SDT300S	Surface Design Technology 3	C	SDT200S	6	27	0.225	Contin	Yes
3	Year	SDS300S	Surface & Design Studies 3	C	SDS200S	6	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
3	Year	PYS300S	Preparatory Studies 3	C	PYS200S	6	18	0.150	Contin	Yes
3	Year	SDP300S	Surface Design Practice 3	C	SDP200S	6	9	0.075	Contin	Yes
3	Year	SDE300S	Surface Design 3	C	SDE200S	6	27	0.225	Contin	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 15

Academic exclusion rules & appeal procedure

The academic exclusion rules and appeal procedure are exactly the same as that applicable to the mainstream National Diploma programme.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: FASHION DESIGN

Course aim

The course equips students to analyse and monitor design processes to meet market demands and to adopt advanced production methods, ensuring cost effectiveness in manufacturing.

The course is aimed at the creative person with a flair for fashion, style and a love for all aspects influencing clothing design. The major emphasis is on the creative and technical skills of design, pattern-making and sewing.

Career opportunities

Graduates can enter fashion design careers with clothing retail stores and clothing manufacturing companies in South Africa and overseas.

Graduates are also equipped to develop fashion retail and manufacturing small businesses. Several fashion design students have been selected over the past few years as finalists in national and international competitions, affording them employment opportunities. This is a career that requires dedication, commitment to achieving high standards and hard work.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)*
One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%)
Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

Recommended Senior Certificate subject:
Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)

Submission of prescribed portfolio

In addition to the minimum admission requirements (see above), applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work and must complete a questionnaire. Details of the portfolio requirements will be supplied on application.

Duration of course

Full-time: three years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

FASHION DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDFASH

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	DST100S	Design Studies 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	BUT102S	Business Studies 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	ACT100S	Applied Clothing Technology 1	C		5	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	TCL100S	Theory of Clothing 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	DST200S	Design Studies 2	C	DST100S	5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	BUT202S	Business Studies 2	C	BUT102S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ACT200S	Applied Clothing Technology 2	C	ACT100S	5	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	TCL200S	Theory of Clothing 2	C	TCL100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DST300S	Design Studies 3	C	DST200S	6	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	BUT300S	Business Studies 3	C	BUT202S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	ACT300S	Applied Clothing Technology 3	C	ACT200S	6	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	TCL300S	Theory of Clothing 3	C	TCL200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 12

PROMOTION CRITERIA

Admission to the second semester of the first year of study

Student progress will be assessed directly after the mid-year portfolio review in May/June. Students, who do not obtain a minimum of 40% in two or more first year subjects, will have the continuation of their course reviewed. A student registered for the National Diploma will be promoted to the next year of study, provided that all subjects are passed in the year concerned. Students will only be promoted to the third year, when they have passed ALL of the prescribed first and second year subjects.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- Students who fail 50% or more of their subjects in any given year, or who fail any subject on the same level twice, will not be re-admitted to the course.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for e.g. extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

B TECH: FASHION DESIGN

Course aim

This course equips students to make a contribution, through research, to the application and evaluation of existing knowledge to a specialised area of fashion design or garment technology and enhance professional and personal development. The four themes of design, technology, management and theory of clothing are progressively developed and the student requires an in-depth understanding of the subject content. Students are encouraged to work in a self-sufficient manner. At the end of the period of study, students are required to produce a research project together with an exhibition of work on a selected aspect of specialised clothing technology or design studies. The programme is conducted in an integral manner, accommodating specialisation in either design, product development, or manufacturing technology.

Career opportunities

The course has an entrepreneurial component, which has enabled some of the graduates to start their own labels, with others freelancing and having their own lines at big retailers such as Woolworths.

Graduates can enter fashion design careers with clothing retail stores and clothing manufacturing companies in South Africa and overseas. Graduates are also equipped to develop fashion retail and manufacturing small businesses.

Several fashion design students have been selected over the past few years as finalists in national and international fashion design competitions affording them employment opportunities. This is a career that requires dedication and commitment to achieving high standards and hard work.

Admission

A National Diploma in Fashion or a recognized equivalent qualification, with an average of at least 60% in the final year of the National Diploma, is required. Applicants are required to submit a portfolio of work, consisting of presentation and technical drawings of a range of clothing design for a fashion show or equivalent body of work. Applicants are also required to submit a topic and outline of a research project to be completed during the B Tech programme as evidence of their ability to conduct basic research.

Applicants have to attend a personal interview on campus with a panel of staff members

Programme structure

This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor who will assist in both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course.

Assessment

At the end of the period of study, the student must have completed a written report and

a body of work which will be exhibited on campus. A panel of staff, assisted by external moderators, will assess the exhibition. Students must satisfy the external moderators that they have fulfilled the requirements towards the Degree.

Duration of course
Full-time: One year
Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

B TECH: FASHION DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTFASH

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	BUT401S	Business Studies 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	SCT400S	Specialised Clothing Technology 4	C		7	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	TCL400S	Theory of Clothing 4	C		7	48	0.400	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 3

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: FASHION DESIGN

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

APPLIED CLOTHING TECHNOLOGY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject consists of two sections viz:

Pattern Studies
In the first year; basic pattern making principles are covered, and basic blocks are drawn up as well as final patterns for making up in the garment construction class.

Garment Construction
In the1st year; the student is exposed to industrial machines, learns to perform various sewing operations, and make up some of the garments from design and pattern classes.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLIED CLOTHING TECHNOLOGY 2

Pre-requisites: Applied Clothing Technology 1

Course outline: In the second year, basic patterns and adaptation of blocks for various garments and different fabrics are covered.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLIED CLOTHING TECHNOLOGY 3

Pre-requisites: Applied Clothing Technology 2

Course outline: In the third year, advanced pattern making is covered, and patterns are designed for a final year range.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

BUSINESS STUDIES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The first year Business Studies course includes 1.5 teaching hours per week and is designed to introduce and develope entrepreneurial thinking through interactive class sessions and activities. The first year course is comprised of the following topics viz The Essence of Design; Entrepreneurship; Global versus local economy; Business ownership, Ethics in Business; Business calculus and statistical analysis; Financial Management; Business opportunities and the Business plan.

Assessments: All assessments are compulsory.

BUSINESS STUDIES 2

Pre-requisites: Business Studies 1

Course outline: The second year Business Studies class includes 1.5 teaching hours per week and includes interactive class discussions and activities. These sessions are aimed at deepening the student's understanding of business management concepts. The course is comprised of the following topics viz Market research; The Marketing Mix; The cost of doing business; Financial statements analysis; Financing of a business; Compiling a business plan.

Assessments: All assessment are compulsory.

BUSINESS STUDIES 3

Pre-requisites: Business Studies 2

Course outline: The third year Business Studies class includes 1.5 teaching hours per week and includes interactive class discussions and activities. These sessions are aimed at preparing the individual for post-graduation through an increased focus on business start-up activities, spanning across legislative requirements, key financial concepts and operations management. The third year course is comprised of the following topics viz Protecting your business; Legal issues in running a business; Taxes and Government regulations; Statutory issues; Business Management; Competitor analysis and strategic marketing and Design process management.

Assessments: All assessment are compulsory.

DESIGN STUDIES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: In the 1st year of Design Studies the course spans over design, technical drawing, illustration, life drawing, media and colour studies. This gives a solid background in drawing the fashion figure, designing clothes and keeping in mind the technical necessities.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN STUDIES 2

Pre-requisites: Design Studies 1

Course outline: Design studies includes design, technical drawing and illustration, building on the 1st year and encompassing more of a variety of fabrics.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN STUDIES 3

Pre-requisites: Design Studies 2

Course outline: The year is spent working towards a final collection and a range of designs.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF CLOTHING 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline:
The subject consists of two sections viz:
Textile Studies
The student will learn about fibres, from natural to man-made, fabric construction, properties, handle and use.

Clothing Manufacturing Technology
In this subject, students get insight in the processes in clothing factories and the workings of different machinery.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF CLOTHING 2

Pre-requisites: Theory of Clothing 1

Course outline:
The subject consists of two sections viz:

Textile Studies
The student will learn about fibres, from natural to man-made, fabric construction, properties, handle and use at a more in depth level.

Clothing Manufacturing Technology
In this subject, students get insight in the processes in clothing factories and the workings of different machinery at a more in depth level.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF CLOTHING 3

Pre-requisites: Theory of Clothing 2

Course outline: Background knowledge of sociology and basic psychology of clothing; influences impacting on clothing choice with reference to the media, group pressure and culture. Introduction to research methodology.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: FASHION DESIGN

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

BUSINESS STUDIES 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Evaluate opportunities and threats in the national and international fashion markets. Develop and present a business plan for a fashion or related business. Research, identify and analyse various fashion marketing opportunities both in South Africa and internationally. Design marketing strategies for various identified markets. Plan the implementation of the marketing programme.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SPECIALISED CLOTHING TECHNOLOGY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject consists of 3 sections:

Design Studies 4
Designing for a range tackling the student's specific research problem.

Pattern Studies 4
Patterns for a research-based range.

Garment Construction 4
Garment Construction for a research-based range.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF CLOTHING 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students are taught to understand the research process and be in a position to prepare a research proposal - this is then extended into a dissertation, and supports the practical component. The final written document should show a scholarly theoretical and critical approach. The student must demonstrate theoretical understanding paying particular attention to the research problem, research questions (aims), the literature review and the methodology (method), and evaluate the outcome (conclusion). The student must also demonstrate insight showing a penetrating capacity which reflects critical insight, and both understanding and an ability to discern underlying meanings. Prove relevance, suitability and applicability to a particular issue/context. Show curiosity, and a spirit of enquiry. Show an ability to work independently as well as collaboratively. Show personal development and creative problem solving.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: GRAPHIC DESIGN

Course aim
Graduates are competent to design and produce visual communication to a professional level relevant to the formal market sector.

Career opportunities
The fields of employment are advertising agencies, design studios, printing and publishing houses.

Employment opportunities also exist in state-supported institutions such as museums, library services and medical institutions.

After gaining practical experience, a graphic designer may decide to become self-employed as a freelance designer.

Areas of specialisation include digital design, illustration, packaging, corporate identity and photography.

Admission requirements
Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)*

One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%)
Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

Recommended Senior Certificate subject:
Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)

Submission of prescribed portfolio
In addition to the minimum admission requirements (see above), applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work, together with a questionnaire. Details of the portfolio requirements will be supplied on application.

Duration of course
Full-time: three years

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: GRAPHIC DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDGDSN

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	PGP100S	Professional Graphic Design Practice 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	HOA100S	History of Art & Design 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CMD100S	Communication Design 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	DGT100S	Design Techniques 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	GDD100S	Graphic Design Drawing 1	C		5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PGP200S	Professional Graphic Design Practice 2	C	PGP100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	HGD200S	History & Theory of Graphic Design 2	C	HOA100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CMD200S	Communication Design 2	C	CMD100S	5	48	0.400	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	DGT200S	Design Techniques 2	C	DGT100S	5	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	GDD200S	Graphic Design Drawing 2	C	GDD100S	5	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PGP300S	Professional Graphic Design Practice 3	C	PGP200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	HGD300S	History & Theory of Graphic Design 3	C	HGD200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	CMD300S	Communication Design 3	C	CMD200S	6	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DGT300S	Design Techniques 3	C	DGT200S	6	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	GDD300S	Graphic Design Drawing 3	C	GDD200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 15

PROMOTION CRITERIA

A student registered for the National Diploma will be promoted to the next year of study, provided all subjects for the preceding year have been passed.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- If a student passes 2 or less subjects, they will be excluded and will have to submit a letter of appeal to the HOD of the Department.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for eg extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

B TECH: GRAPHIC DESIGN

Course aim
Graduates make a contribution through research to the application and evaluation of existing knowledge of a specialised area of graphic design, in order to further professional growth and personal development.

Career opportunities
- The main fields of employment are advertising agencies, design studios, printing and publishing houses.
- Employment opportunities also exist in state-supported institutions such as museums, library services and medical institutions.
- After gaining practical experience, a graphic designer may decide to become self-employed as a freelance designer.
- Areas of specialisation include digital design, illustration, packaging, corporate identity and photography.

Admission requirements
A National Diploma in Graphic Design or a recognised equivalent qualification is required, with an average of at least 60% in the final year of the National Diploma as well as a portfolio of practical work.

Programme structure
This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor who will assist in both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course.

Assessment
At the end of the period of study, the student must have completed a written report and a body of work which will be exhibited on campus. A panel of staff, assisted by external moderators, will assess the exhibition. Students must satisfy the external moderators that they have fulfilled the requirements towards the Degree.

Duration of course
One year on a full-time basis.

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

B TECH: GRAPHIC DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTGDSN

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	TAR400S	Theory of Graphic Design & Academic Report 4	C		7	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	CMD400S	Communication Design 4	C		7	84	0.700	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 2

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

M TECH: GRAPHIC DESIGN

Course aim

Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in graphic design and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge. The Faculty offers reputable postgraduate design qualifications at Masters and Doctoral level. The Master of Technology (M Tech) and Doctor of Technology (D Tech) in the Design Programmes, places a high emphasis on applied research that addresses challenges facing society in diverse development milieu. By building up on undergraduate foundations in Communication/ Graphic Design; Industrial/Product Design; Fashion Design, Surface Design, Jewellery Design and Photography, candidates in the Masters programme often select topics that grapple with complex design problems. The socially conscious ethos encourages research in such fields as, inter alia, Design for Development, Design for Sustainability, Interaction Design, Participatory Design, Universal Design and User-Experience Design. The Master's degree can be attained as a full (100%) thesis, or a mini-dissertation/part practical output (50–50) qualification. Doctoral programmes are only offered as a full (100%) thesis.

Career opportunities

Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements

A B Tech: Graphic Design with a pass in Research Methodology.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee

The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of studies

A minimum of one calendar year full-time or two consecutive calendar years part-time. Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate on the prescribed application form which can be obtained from the University's website. The interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

M TECH: GRAPHIC DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTGDSR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
5	Year	R5GD01R	Thesis	C		8	120	1.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

D TECH: GRAPHIC DESIGN

Course aim

Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in graphic design and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge. The Faculty offers reputable postgraduate design qualifications at Masters and Doctoral level. The Master of Technology (M Tech) and Doctor of Technology (D Tech) in the Design Programmes, places a high emphasis on applied research that addresses challenges facing society in diverse development milieu. By building up on undergraduate foundations in Communication/ Graphic Design; Industrial/Product Design; Fashion Design, Surface Design, Jewellery Design and Photography, candidates in the Masters programme often select topics that grapple with complex design problems. The socially conscious ethos encourages research in such fields as, inter alia, Design for Development, Design for Sustainability, Interaction Design, Participatory Design, Universal Design and User-Experience Design. The Master's degree can be attained as a full (100%) thesis, or a mini-dissertation/part practical output (50–50) qualification. Doctoral programmes are only offered as a full (100%) thesis.

Career opportunities

Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements

An M Tech Graphic Design or a recognised equivalent qualification.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee

The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of studies

A minimum of two consecutive calendar years. Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate on the prescribed application form which can be obtained from the University's website. The interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

D TECH: GRAPHIC DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: DTGDSR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
6	Year	R6GD01R	Thesis	C		8	240	2.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: GRAPHIC DESIGN

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

COMMUNICATION DESIGN 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Communication Design 1 is a core subject in which students will be introduced to and master basic design elements and principles. As the year progresses, these techniques will be applied with increasing complexity, to simple design briefs for a specific target market. Students will analyse how image, symbol, sign, visual metaphor, context, persuasion and style function in visual communication, and will be able to apply this in communication design solutions. They will apply colour theory, strategic thinking, typographic principles and communicate design solutions and will be required to direct and prepare the production of the design in accordance with professional technical and media specifications.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATION DESIGN 2

Pre-requisites: Communication Design 1

Course outline: Communication Design 2 is a core subject in which the student will be introduced to and master basic design elements and principles. As the year progresses, students will be required to apply these principles with increasing complexity to simple design briefs for a specific target market. They will also be required to articulate the essential requirements of a simple visual communication assignment and visualize original ideas which meet the requirements of a simple communication brief. Finally they must design the components of a visual communication campaign to give expression to the original concept

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATION DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: Communication Design 2

Course outline: Communication Design 3 deals with the interpretation, conceptualization, visualization and presentation of extended and in-depth communication design assignments, emphasizing visual problem-solving content while reflecting a professional, commercial approach. Students are taught to analyse how image, symbol, sign, visual metaphor, context, persuasion and style function in visual communication, and will be able to apply this in communication design solutions. They will be required to identify and solve problems using critical and creative thinking and work effectively with others as a member of a team or group.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN TECHNIQUES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Design Techniques informs and supports Communication Design, through the application of 2 and 3-Dimensional hand and digital media in the realisation of design solutions. Students will experiment with and explore a range of materials and media and their relationship with meaning and concept. Photography forms an integral part of the subject.

They will also be required to:
visualise original ideas which meet the requirements of a creative brief; design the components of a visual communication assignment to give expression to the original concept and direct and prepare the production of the design in accordance with professional technical and media specifications

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN TECHNIQUES 2

Pre-requisites: Design Techniques 1

Course outline: Design Techniques 2 informs and supports Communication Design, through the application of 2 and 3-Dimensional hand and digital media in the realisation of design solutions. Students will experiment with and explore a range of materials and media and their relationship with meaning and concept and they will be critically involved in design, processes and products. Photography forms an integral part of the subject. At the end of the course, students will be competent to design and produce a limited range of illustrations, prints, 3-dimensional designs and animation through the mastery of a variety of materials and media, technical as well as conceptual skills. Students will further display technical and conceptual competency in digital photography.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN TECHNIQUES 3

Pre-requisites: Design Techniques 2

Course outline: Photography is a technique used by all designers in different ways in order to generate imagery. It is therefore a core subject. Three-dimensional design, illustration and printmaking are all electives designed to allow exploration of a chosen field. The subject aims to provide opportunity to learn the technical and conceptual skills required for specialisation. Students will be required to: visualise original ideas which meet the requirements of a creative brief; design the components of a visual communication assignment to give expression to the original concept and direct and prepare the production of the design in accordance with professional technical and media specifications.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

GRAPHIC DESIGN DRAWING 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Drawing underpins all the practical subjects as a communication and conceptual tool, and as a visualisation method. In the drawing course, students will develop representational, observational and perceptual skills using a variety of media. Through this process the student will explore the interpretive possibilities of personal mark-making and their relationship to meaning. Students will be required to visualise original ideas which meet the requirements of a creative brief; articulate the essential requirements of a simple visual communication assignment and design the components of a visual communication assignment to give expression to the original concept.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

GRAPHIC DESIGN DRAWING 2

Pre-requisites: Graphic Design Drawing 1

Course outline: Drawing underpins all the practical subjects as a communication and conceptual tool, and as a visualisation method. In the drawing course, the student will develop representational, observational and perceptual skills using a variety of media. Through this process students will explore the interpretive possibilities of personal mark-making and their relationship to meaning. At the end of the course, a qualifying learner will be able to produce drawings in response to a range of perceptual, conceptual, and expressive situations as required by the brief, using a variety of appropriate drawing and illustration media.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

GRAPHIC DESIGN DRAWING 3

Pre-requisites: Graphic Design Drawing 2

Course outline: Drawing underpins all the practical subjects as a communication and conceptual tool, and as a visualisation method. In the drawing course students will develop representational, observational perceptual skills using a variety of media. Through this process, the student will explore the interpretive possibilities of personal mark-making and their relationship to meaning. In third year students are required to present all ideas on paper using drawing. This is standard practice in industry and as such is the rule rather than the exception, when brainstorming, presenting and discussing work with fellow learners and lecturers.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HISTORY OF ART & DESIGN 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The first year of history of art concentrates on the history of art and design of Europe, Britain and the East, from antiquity to the end of the nineteenth century. Reference will also be made to the impact on African and contemporary design and theory. The primary aim of this course is to stimulate a critical awareness of art and design from a multi-cultural perspective and to stress the importance of placing design within a social, economic and political context.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

HISTORY & THEORY OF GRAPHIC DESIGN 2

Pre-requisites: History of Art & Design 1

Course outline: History & Theory of Graphic Design 2 deals with the following topics viz: chronological overview of 20th Century design movements; birth and rise of Modernism; Avant-garde movements i.e. Impressionism, Cubism, Futurism, De Stijl, Dada and Surrealism. Consolidation of the Modern Aesthetic; Post War design; Late 20th Century Design movements i.e. Postmodernism and Deconstruction and Stylistic characteristics and motifs for each period.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

HISTORY & THEORY OF GRAPHIC DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: History & Theory of Graphic Design 2

Course outline: History & Theory of Graphic Design 3 deals with the following topics viz: Theory of Design and Contemporary Trends and Theories; Design Thinking; Design Research; Design Concept Generation and development; Traditional Cultures vs Subcultures; Globalisation and Ethical Debates; Advertising; Aesthetics and Ethics and Research Methodology.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

PROFESSIONAL GRAPHIC DESIGN PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisite: None

Course outline: The first year Professional Practice course deals with the following topics viz: options of employed or self-employment; personal qualities of a successful entrepreneur; entrepreneurship & the economy; an economic system; types of economic systems; non-profit organizations, local economy; the global economy; types of businesses & business ownership; starting a business; compiling a business plan; purpose of a business plan; resources needed to start and operate a business; essential business mathematics and statistics for a business; budgeting & tools for budgeting; business opportunity; sources of opportunity; thinking creatively and turning ideas into opportunities.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL GRAPHIC DESIGN PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisite: Professional Graphic Design Practice 1

Course outline: The second year Professional Practice course is designed to give students fundamental background skills, directly related to their core subjects that will enable them to successfully participate in a professional graphic design practice. The second year Business Studies class includes 1.5 teaching hours per week and includes interactive class discussions and activities. These sessions are aimed at deepening the student's understanding of business management concepts. The course is comprised of the following topics viz Market research; The Marketing Mix; the cost of doing business; Financial statements analysis; Financing of a business; Compiling a business plan.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL GRAPHIC DESIGN PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisite: Professional Graphic Design Practice 2

Course outline: The third year Business Studies class includes 1.5 teaching hours per week and includes interactive class discussions and activities. These sessions are aimed at preparing the individual for post-graduation through an increased focus on business start-up activities, spanning across legislative requirements, key financial concepts and operations management. The third year course is comprised of the following topics viz Protecting your business; Legal issues in running a business; Taxes and Government regulations; Statutory issues; Business Management; Competitor analysis and strategic marketing and Design process management.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: GRAPHIC DESIGN

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

COMMUNICATION DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline:
Full-time: Students do a self-motivated design project. They are required to write their own brief for this in June according to the knowledge gained through the research. This will be executed in the third and fourth terms. The course in the first and second terms includes Work Integrated Learning - i.e. live projects and an internship of three weeks at a design studio or agency. There are also set projects and course modules to complete.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF GRAPHIC DESIGN & ACADEMIC REPORT 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The theory subject consists of Research Methodology lectures and seminars. Students choose a topic for investigation, write a proposal for this and then conduct qualitative/quantitative research in their chosen field. This allows the student to develop in-depth knowledge into the area that they have chosen. The Academic/Research report (this is not a Thesis) is approximately 60 – 120 pages long and this will be examined by an external examiner.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: THREE-DIMENSIONAL DESIGN

Course aim

The course equips students with the knowledge and skills to apply the design process to problems related to mass-produced products, to produce conceptual sketches, technical specifications, rendered images and physical or virtual 3D models to communicate proposed solutions in a professional way.

The graduate with a National Diploma will be able to participate in debates around current design thinking and movements, based on historical reference and position the results of their work in the business framework that generated the need for the design input.

Career opportunities

After qualifying, graduates become product designers with the competence to work independently as designers, or who work for industrial designers as niche skills specialists like CAD operators, model-makers or illustrators.

Graduates are also employed as in-house designers for manufacturing companies, or in design-related fields such as furniture design, special effects and props for the film industry.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)*

One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%)
Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

Recommended Senior Certificate subject:
Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)

Submission of prescribed portfolio

In addition to the minimum admission requirements (see above), applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of written and practical art work.

Duration of course

Full-time: three years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: THREE-DIMENSIONAL DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: ND3DDS

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	DNT100S	Design Studies 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	DFD100S	Drawing for Design 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	KUN100S	History of Art 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	BUT101S	Business Studies 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	TCN101S	Technology 1	C		5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	HIN200S	History of Industrial Design 2	C	KUN100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	DSM200S	Design Media 2	C	DFD100S	5	48	0.400	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PDE200S	Product Design 2	C	DNT100S	5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	BUT201S	Business Studies 2	C	BUT101S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	TCN201S	Technology 2	C	TCN101S	5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	HIN300S	History of Industrial Design 3	C	HIN200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DSM300S	Design Media 3	C	DSM200S	6	48	0.400	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PDE300S	Product Design 3	C	PDE200S	6	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	BUT301S	Business Studies 3	C	BUT201S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	TCN300S	Technology 3	C	TCN201S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 15

PROMOTION CRITERIA

A student registered for the National Diploma will be promoted to the next year of study, provided all subjects for the preceding year have been passed.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- Students who fail 50% or more of their subjects in any given year, or who fail any subject on the same level twice, will not be re-admitted to the course.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for eg extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

B TECH: INDUSTRIAL DESIGN

Course aim
The course equips students with the knowledge and skills to compose and apply an appropriately researched professional design process to problems related to mass-produced products, resulting in proposals that take account of the desired function, all user aspects, environmental responsibilities and cultural suitability.

Career opportunities
This course is aimed at industrial designers who have the competence to handle industrial design projects independently, who are self-employed or who work for an industrial design company.

Further employment opportunities exist as in-house designers for manufacturing companies, as niche skills specialists like CAD operators, model makers or illustrators or in design-related fields such as special effects and props for the film industry.

Admission requirements
A National Diploma in Three-Dimensional Design (or a recognised equivalent qualification) with above average results is required, as well as a portfolio of design projects demonstrating three-dimensional design competence at the appropriate level and applied to manufactured items.

Programme structure
This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor who will assist in both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course.

Assessment
At the end of the period of study, the student must have completed a written report and a body of work which will be exhibited on campus. A panel of staff, assisted by external moderators, will assess the exhibition. Students must satisfy the external moderators that they have fulfilled the requirements towards the Degree.

Duration of course
Full-time: One year
Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

B TECH: INDUSTRIAL DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTIDDN

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	DGN400S	Design Theory	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PFP400S	Professional Practice	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PDE400S	Product Design 4	C		7	72	0.600	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 3

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

M TECH: INDUSTRIAL DESIGN

Course aim

Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in industrial design and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge. The Faculty offers reputable postgraduate design qualifications at Masters and Doctoral level. The Master of Technology (M Tech) and Doctor of Technology (D Tech) in the Design Programmes, places a high emphasis on applied research that addresses challenges facing society in diverse development milieu. By building up on undergraduate foundations in Communication/ Graphic Design; Industrial/Product Design; Fashion Design, Surface Design, Jewellery Design and Photography, candidates in the Masters programme often select topics that grapple with complex design problems. The socially conscious ethos encourages research in such fields as, inter alia, Design for Development, Design for Sustainability, Interaction Design, Participatory Design, Universal Design and User-Experience Design. The Master's degree can be attained as a full (100%) thesis, or a mini-dissertation/part practical output (50–50) qualification. Doctoral programmes are only offered as a full (100%) thesis.

Career opportunities

Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements

A B Tech: Industrial Design with a pass in Research Methodology.

Programme structure

This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor who will assist in both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee

The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of course

A minimum of one calendar year full-time or two consecutive calendar years part-time. Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate on the prescribed application form which can be obtained from the University's website. The interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

M TECH: INDUSTRIAL DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTINDR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
5	Year	R5DS01R	Thesis	C		8	120	1.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: INDUSTRIAL DESIGN

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

BUSINESS STUDIES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Business is an important aspect of design courses and will introduce the student to the principles of economics, business administration and entrepreneurship. The programme is stepped throughout the three year course to help the student gain insight into common business practices and starting their own design business. Various fields will be covered in this course with the focus in the first year on entrepreneurship as practiced in design.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

BUSINESS STUDIES 2

Pre-requisites: Business Studies 1

Course outline: Business is an important aspect of design courses and introduces students to the Principles of economics, business administration and entrepreneurship. The program is stepped throughout the three year course to help the student gain insight into common business practices and starting their own design business. Business Studies 2 covers a diverse field of business principles that include marketing, human resources, financial statements and how to write a business plan.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

BUSINESS STUDIES 3

Pre-requisites: Business Studies 2

Course outline: Business is an important aspect of design courses and introduces students to the principles of economics, business administration and entrepreneurship. The program is stepped throughout the three year course to help the student gain insight into common business practices and starting their own design business. In the third year Business Studies focuses on entrepreneurial studies and the analysis of design products for marketing and promotional purposes.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN STUDIES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Design Studies 1 focuses on design principles relating to 2D and 3D design. Three-Dimensional design projects during the year cover elements and principles of design in a variety of materials and processes. Two-dimensional projects and processes: two-dimensional projects cover elements and principles of typography, layout and colour applications in a variety of media. Part of a professional designer's job is to discuss and present their work and to communicate successfully with their clients.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN MEDIA 2

Pre-requisites: Drawing for Design 1

Course outline: Design Media 2 consists of technical specification, illustration & digital competencies. Students will further their skills in technical drawing, both with manual and digital instruments. They will learn to produce accurately rendered illustrations of their design through a series of targeted exercises and consequent practice. They will also learn to use digital tools to support their design work.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN MEDIA 3

Pre-requisites: Design Media 2

Course outline: Design Media 3 is a development of skills acquired in Design Media 2. Engineering drawing, technical specification, illustration and digital competencies are still components as is the role and development of communication skills. Digital skills and software knowledge in these subjects are developed as part of the course.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DRAWING FOR DESIGN 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Drawing for Design 1 consists of three separate fields viz Freehand Drawing, Technical Drawing and Perspective Drawing and focuses on the representation of 3D reality in a 2D format. What students will learn from the drawing projects is to observe reality. Students

will develop an understanding of how light influences the appearance of objects. The course will develop students' conceptual and visualisation skills which are vital to a designer.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HISTORY OF ART 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The first year history course concentrates on the history of art and design of Europe, Britain and the East, from antiquity to the end of the nineteenth century. Modules include Ancient Civilisations, the Middle Ages and Islam, the Renaissance and Enlightenment, the Industrial Revolution and the influence of the East. The primary aim of this course is to stimulate a critical awareness of art and design history from a multi-cultural perspective and to stress the importance of placing design within a social, economic and political context.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HISTORY OF INDUSTRIAL DESIGN 2

Pre-requisites: History of Art 1

Course outline: The purpose of this course is to develop students' understanding of the chronological development of movements and styles; the rationale being that students will have a clear indication when the different periods occurred, making it easier to situate historically and critically analyse and compare. It covers the following topics viz Art & Craft and Art Nouveau, the Avant Garde, the Vienna Secession, the Werkbund and the Bauhaus. The International Style, The Art Deco Style, Post-War Design, Post Modernism and Deconstruction.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HISTORY OF INDUSTRIAL DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: History of Industrial Design 2

Course outline: The third year of study is a critical evaluation of design theory and modern interpretations of existing concepts including design thinking. The course is academic and focuses on discussion and small research group activities. Students will be introduced to the two new project formats viz the research proposal and the research report. Students will be required to investigate the development of Industrial Design as a research discipline.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRODUCT DESIGN 2

Pre-requisites: Design Studies 1

Course outline: Product Design 2 is the subject which concentrates on the application of industrial processes to achieve the desired form and function. Students will be required to deal with the reality of three-dimensional objects, their function, form and finish and by the end of the course they will have developed an awareness of the design process and the necessary skills to apply that knowledge in the solution of various design problems. These skills will include prototyping and production drawings within the context of metal, plastic, wood and ceramic technologies.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRODUCT DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: Product Design 2

Course outline: Product Design 3 continues with the investigation of industrial processes to achieve the desired forms and function of various products. A focus at third year level is the integration of industry requirements into the curriculum. For this reason the curriculum is quite fluid as it incorporates opportunities to work with industry counterparts. Students need to deal with the reality of three-dimensional objects, their function, form, finish as well as real-time deadlines.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

TECHNOLOGY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Technology 1 is an introductory course, where the student will be introduced to various materials and related manufacturing processes. Materials discussed are mostly linked to the projects undertaken in 3D design (part of Design Studies 1), which allows for first-hand experience of the material and processes. The properties and applications of materials are discussed. Students will be required to formulate materials research in files. Material categories include: cardboard and paper, timber, metals, ceramics and plastics.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

TECHNOLOGY 2

Pre-requisites: Technology 1

Course outline: Technology 2 concentrates on the industrial manufacturing processes for various materials; how things are done and what the consequences are for designing with those materials. The subject covers a wide variety of materials and is integrated to a large extent with Product Design 2 through the application of the knowledge gained. Regular factory visits give an insight into the realities of designing in industry.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

TECHNOLOGY 3

Pre-requisites: Technology 2

Course outline: Technology 3 concentrates on tooling necessary for manufacture and the consequent limitations on the design of components. It further elaborates on finishing processes and expands on more advanced moulding techniques. It explores advanced computer-based technologies in manufacturing. There is also a focus on emerging technologies and how it influences design and global concerns. The course aims to develop awareness of global concerns and how design and technology can be forces of change. The theory of technologies is investigated, producing future trends based on established technological innovations of the past.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: INDUSTRIAL DESIGN

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

DESIGN THEORY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students must be able to: understand the research process and be in a position to prepare a research proposal - this is then extended into a dissertation, and supports the practical component. The final written document should show a scholarly theoretical and critical approach. Demonstrate theoretical understanding – paying particular attention to the research problem, research questions (aims), the literature review and the methodology (method), and evaluate the outcome (conclusion). Demonstrate insight – showing a penetrating capacity which reflects critical insight, and both understanding and

an ability to discern underlying meanings. Prove relevance – suitability and applicability to a particular issue/context.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRODUCT DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: A number of teaching methods will be employed. These include individual consultation with lecturers, group learning, peer review and interaction between students and lecturers during the presentation of projects. In addition, establishing links with practicing designers, craft people, attending workshops, trade exhibitions and industry contact is expected. Projects will consist of various modules related to design i.e. research, drawing concepts, trend, presentation, communication, media, economic techniques, practical application and new developments.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL PRACTICE 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Evaluate opportunities and threats in the national and international product design markets. Develop and present a business plan for an industrial or related business. Research, identify and analyse various industrial design marketing opportunities both in South Africa and internationally. Design marketing strategies for various identified markets. Plan the implementation of the marketing programme.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: JEWELLERY DESIGN & MANUFACTURE

Course aim

The aim of the course is to prepare students for the emerging South African jewellery industry in managerial, marketing and manufacturing capacities, while fostering a South African design ethic that does not rely on mass plagiarism of imported images.

The course has the following objectives:

- To draw on historical studies which heighten design awareness;
- To develop skills to communicate design intention;
- To develop technical skills to manufacture jewellery from preparation of metals through to final finishing;
- To instil good workshop practice;
- To develop applied drawing and illustration techniques.

Career opportunities

Graduates can enter the following career paths:
Work as a goldsmith; design and create original models for jewellery manufacturers for mass production; manage the workshop of a jewellery manufacturer; become a jewellery designer in a jewellery studio; become a salesperson or manager in the jewellery retail industry; design and manufacture theatre or costume jewellery; become a buyer for large jewellery chain stores; evaluate jewellery items; repair jewellery items; manage a design boutique/studio; start a jewellery design and manufacturing business.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)*

One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%)
Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

Recommended Senior Certificate subject:
Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)

Submission of prescribed portfolio

In addition to the minimum admission requirements (see above), applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of written and practical art work.

Duration of course

Full-time: three years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: JEWELLERY DESIGN & MANUFACTURE

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDJEWD

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	JED100S	Jewellery Design1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	JDR100S	Jewellery Drawing 1	C		5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	JTQ100S	Jewellery Techniques 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	JTH100M	Jewellery Theory 1	C		5	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	JTH100A	Metallurgy	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	JTH100B	Business Studies 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	JED200S	Jewellery Design 2	C	JED100S	5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	JDR200S	Jewellery Drawing 2	C	JDR100S	5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	JTQ200S	Jewellery Techniques 2	C	JTQ100S	5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	JTH200M	Jewellery Theory 2	C	JTH100M	5	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	JTH200A	History Of Jewellery	C	None	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	JTH200B	Business Studies 2	C	JTH100B	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	JED300S	Jewellery Design 3	C	JED200S	6	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	JDR300S	Jewellery Drawing 3	C	JDR200S	6	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	JTQ300S	Jewellery Techniques 3	C	JTQ200S	6	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	JTH300M	Jewellery Theory 3	C	JTH200M	6	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	JTH300A	Gemmology Practical 3	C	None	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	JTH300B	Gemmology Theory 3	C	None	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 12

PROMOTION CRITERIA

A student registered for the National Diploma will be promoted to the next year of study, provided all subjects for the preceding year have been passed.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- Students who fail 50% or more of their subjects in any given year, or who fail any subject on the same level twice, will not be re-admitted to the course.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for eg extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

B TECH: JEWELLERY DESIGN & MANUFACTURE

Course aim

Graduates must produce a cohesive body of creative work that is a synthesis of technology, problem-solving and the application of research methodology. The course equips the graduate with current technological knowledge in the field of computer-aided design and associated manufacturing processes.

Graduates must demonstrate the ability to co-ordinate and conduct research and development in a specialised area of design and/or technology in the field of jewellery design and manufacture. These skills, coupled with a deeper understanding of the implications of design thinking, will contribute to the development of the local jewellery industry within the global context.

Career opportunities

Graduates can enter the following career paths:

- Work as a goldsmith;
- Design and create original models for jewellery manufacturers for mass production;
- Manage the workshop of a jewellery manufacturer;
- Become a jewellery designer in a jewellery studio;
- Become a salesperson or manager in the jewellery retail industry;
- Design and manufacture theatre or costume jewellery;
- Become a buyer for large jewellery chain stores;
- Evaluate jewellery items;
- Repair jewellery items;
- Manage a design boutique/studio;
- Start a jewellery design and manufacturing business.

Admission requirements

A National Diploma in Jewellery Design & Manufacture (or a recognized equivalent qualification) is required. Prospective students should have achieved above average results in the final year of the National Diploma and they must submit a portfolio of practical work.

Programme structure

This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor who will assist in both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course.

Assessment

At the end of the period of study, the student must have completed a written report and a body of work, which will be exhibited on campus. A panel of staff, assisted by external

moderators, will assess the exhibition. Students must satisfy the external moderators that they have fulfilled the requirements towards the Degree.

Duration of course
Full-time: One year
Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

B TECH: JEWELLERY DESIGN & MANUFACTURE

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTJEWD

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	JDM400S	Jewellery Design & Manufacture 4	C		7	96	0.800	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	JTH400S	Jewellery Theory 4	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 2

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: JEWELLERY DESIGN & MANUFACTURE

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

JEWELLERY DESIGN 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: To teach students the basic principles and elements of jewellery design and to expose students to drawing and presentation drawing. One design project per cycle, based on the concurrent level of technical development and exposure to history of design.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY DESIGN 2

Pre-requisites: Jewellery Design 1

Course outline: To build on and expand on the basis laid down in the first year of the course. To develop the student's understanding of historical and contemporary design concepts. More advanced use of basic design elements. Use of colour in jewellery. Various forms of jewellery e.g. pendants, necklaces, rings, ear studs, earrings, belt buckles etc.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: Jewellery Design 2

Course outline: To expand the student's knowledge and understanding of design history and concepts through research. To develop the student's individual skills in a way that is relevant to contemporary design and society. Exploring design possibilities in individual wax modelling for casting e.g. sculptural design.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY DRAWING 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: To teach students the basics of observation, proportion, perspective etc. To introduce students to freehand rendering. To introduce students to technical drawing as applied to jewellery design. To enable students to visualise drawing as a communication medium through presentation drawing, in order to sell their designs and the use of tones etc. to show surface qualities.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY DRAWING 2

Pre-requisites: Jewellery Drawing 1

Course outline: To refine the student's understanding and control of perspective, observation, proportion and tone. Introduction to advanced rendering techniques. One project per cycle, based on the design project for the same cycle. Presentation drawing of items of jewellery using various graphic techniques.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY DRAWING 3

Pre-requisites: Jewellery Drawing 2

Course outline:
The aim of Jewellery Drawing 2, is to refine and hone the student's rendering skills to a level acceptable to the trade. It initiates the development of specific specialised techniques in individual students. Presentation drawings of jewellery design using various graphic techniques form part of the course. Emphasis is on well balanced, simple layouts, with appeal and impact.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY TECHNIQUES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline:
The aim of "Jewellery Techniques 1" is to provide students with a sound technical background. An in-depth study of simple construction methods. To prepare the students to work at a jeweller's bench and to master the disciplines taught in a jewellery workshop,

as well as those pertaining to metallurgy. Students will be trained to manufacture a piece in direct relation to jewellery design i.e. to make a three-dimensional item in metal and related precious materials from the two-dimensional confines of drawings and presentation drawings. Instruction in the basic principles of construction, applying the techniques of sawing, filing, cutting, riveting, wire bending, soldering and simple mounting of coloured stones.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY TECHNIQUES 2

Pre-requisites: Jewellery Techniques 1

Course outline: The aim of "Jewellery Techniques 2" is to refine the skills acquired in the first year. Introduction of more specialised manufacturing techniques such as hollow construction, tool making, surface enhancement and mass production. Construction of designs based on historical or contemporary concepts. Techniques of enamelling. Different methods of assembling brooches, bracelets and other items of jewellery e.g. charnier joints, links and hinges etc. The techniques of melt-on metal surfaces, reticulation and molcume. Techniques of stone mounting for round, oval, square, rectangular and eight-angled stones.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY TECHNIQUES 3

Pre-requisites: Jewellery Techniques 2

Course outline: Continuing refinement of previously taught skills. Introduction to special manufacturing processes such as various forms of casting, plating, setting etc. Construction of designs originating in design and/or drawing projects. Introduction to the process of lost-wax casting (manually). Modelling in wax for mass production, mould-making for mass production. Techniques of plating and electroforming. Various techniques of setting stones and engraving. Techniques of beading work, applying beading tools etc.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY THEORY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject is comprised of two modules namely "Metallurgy" and "Business Studies 1". Students are required to pass each module with 50% before they will be given credit for "Jewellery Theory 1"

METALLURGY

Workshop practice and application of jewellery tools, acids and chemicals, safety and precautions, internal structures and working properties of different metals. Surface techniques on metals. Mass production, alloys, assaying and recovery of scrap metals.

BUSINESS STUDIES 1

Small business structure, advertising and marketing, financial information, retail/workshop environment and costing. Business entities, Occupational Health and Labour Laws, intellectual property rights.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY THEORY 2

Pre-requisites: Jewellery Theory 1

Course outline: This subject is comprised of two modules namely "History of Jewellery" and "Business Studies 2". Students are required to pass each module with 50% before they will be given a credit for "Jewellery Theory 2".

HISTORY OF JEWELLERY

Developments in the manufacturing of jewellery, gem cutting, innovations, exploration, mining and social developments. An overview of Western Cultural history, medieval, Byzantine, Renaissance, Mannerism, Baroque, Rococo, Neo-Classicism, Romanticism, Nineteenth Century, Twentieth Century. Principal jewellers and their patrons.

BUSINESS STUDIES 2

Basic bookkeeping, personal expense account, entrepreneur account. Group projects, Presentation of retail/workshop portfolio for business plans applications. Banks and the Department of Trade and Industry (accounts, loans, funding). Business plan and registration of a business entity and intellectual property rights.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY THEORY 3

Pre-requisites: Jewellery Theory 2

Course outline: Jewellery Theory 3 is concerned with the study of Gemmology. The subject is comprised of two modules viz "Gemmology Theory" and "Gemmology Practical".

GEMMOLOGY THEORY 3

To provide students with a sound knowledge of the processes of gem identification as applicable to the jewellery industry. To provide the student with a basic knowledge of the physical, structural and other properties of gems; the nature of gemstones; chemical properties of gemstones and an introduction to imitation and synthetic gemstones

GEMMOLOGY PRACTICAL 3

Students are required to pass a practical examination at the end of the third year. This includes hydrostatic weighing of gemstones, testing of stones with instruments in order to gradually familiarise the student with laboratory testing practice.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: JEWELLERY DESIGN & MANUFACTURE

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

JEWELLERY DESIGN & MANUFACTURE 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The course expands on the previous three years design with emphasis on one or two directions viz: (a) design as a personal expression emphasising the artist as an individual or (b) the creation of jewellery for commercial purposes, following the latest design trends.

The choice of (a) or (b) is coupled to the manufacture of the pieces required to be made in Jewellery Techniques & Practical 4 viz the design direction chosen is linked to a minimum of two of the following jewellery techniques viz the hand making of high quality jewellery pieces at the jeweller's bench; the reproduction of models for casting and mass production; the use of rolling methods in patterning metals; the finer points of filigree and the extension of mounting and engraving techniques.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

JEWELLERY THEORY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline:
Students are taught to understand the research process and be in a position to prepare a research proposal - this is then extended into a dissertation and supports the practical component. The final written document should show a scholarly theoretical and critical approach. Demonstrate theoretical understanding – paying particular attention to the research problem, research questions (aims), the literature review and the methodology (method), and evaluate the outcome (conclusion). Demonstrate insight – showing a penetrating capacity which reflects critical insight, and both understanding and an ability to discern underlying meanings. Prove relevance – suitability and applicability to a particular issue/context.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: SURFACE DESIGN

Course aim

The course is a three-year broad-based qualification the aim of which is to train students to be aware of, and to remain constantly in touch with the ever-changing pulse of the textile design and lifestyle industries. The course is the platform for further study towards the B Tech degree in Surface Design, which is awarded after a further year of study and allows for research and specialisation in a chosen field.

Surface Design encompasses a wide range of surface applications. While the course is structured to afford the most suitable preparation for entry into the textile design and lifestyle industries, it also exposes students to surface applications such as gift-wrap, wallpaper, fashion textiles, home textiles, carpet design as well as surface design on ceramics, glass, wood, plastics, steel and automobile fabrics.

Career opportunities

The course prepares students for careers in fashion, interior, surface and lifestyle design industries.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)*

One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%)
Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

Recommended Senior Certificate subject:
Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)

Submission of prescribed portfolio

In addition to the minimum admission requirements (see above), applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of written and practical art work.

Duration of course

Full-time: three years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: SURFACE DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDSURD

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	SDP100S	Surface Design Practice 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	SDT100S	Surface Design Technology 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	SDE100S	Surface Design 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PYS100S	Preparatory Studies 1	C		5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	SDS100S	Surface & Design Studies 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	SDP200S	Surface Design Practice 2	C	SDP100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	SDT200S	Surface Design Technology 2	C	SDT100S	5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	SDE200S	Surface Design 2	C	SDE100S	5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PYS200S	Preparatory Studies 2	C	PYS100S	5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	SDS200S	Surface & Design Studies 2	C	SDS100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	SDP300S	Surface Design Practice 3	C	SDP200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	SDT300S	Surface Design Technology 3	C	SDT200S	6	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	SDE300S	Surface Design 3	C	SDE200S	6	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PYS300S	Preparatory Studies 3	C	PYS200S	6	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	SDS300S	Surface & Design Studies 3	C	SDS200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 15

PROMOTION CRITERIA

Admission to the second semester of the first year of study

Student progress will be assessed directly after the mid-year portfolio review in May/June. Students who do not obtain a minimum of 40% in two or more first year subjects, will have the continuation of their course reviewed.

A student registered for the National Diploma will be promoted to the next year of study, provided that all subjects for the preceding year have been passed. Students will only be promoted to the third year, when they have passed ALL of the prescribed first and second year subjects.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- Students who fail 50% or more of their subjects in any given year, or who fail any subject on the same level twice, will not be re-admitted to the course.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for eg extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

B TECH: SURFACE DESIGN

Course aim
The course is structured to equip students to function responsibly in a creative environment. Students must be able to adapt to aesthetic, economic and technological advances in order to understand the influence of political, cultural and social trends on design.

This specialist qualification is geared to prepare students for their individual career choices and to enter the global design community with confidence.

Career opportunities
Students decide whether their careers may best be served in the surface and lifestyle design industries, for instance the fashion industry, trend prediction, merchandising, home textiles, wallpaper design, fabric buying, social outreach, range co-ordination or other related surface design industries.

Admission requirements
A National Diploma in Surface Design (or a recognized equivalent qualification) with an average of 60% in the final year of the National Diploma as well as a portfolio of practical work.

Programme structure
This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor who will assist in both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course.

Assessment
At the end of the period of study, the student must have completed a written report and a body of work which will be exhibited on campus. A panel of staff, assisted by external moderators, will assess the exhibition. Students must satisfy the external moderators that they have fulfilled the requirements towards the Degree.

Duration of course
Full-time: One year
Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

B TECH: SURFACE DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTSURD

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	SDT400S	Surface Design Technology 4	C		7	42	0.350	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	SDS400S	Surface & Design Studies 4	C		7	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	SDE400S	Surface Design 4	C		7	42	0.350	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 3

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: SURFACE DESIGN

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

PREPARATORY STUDIES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject consists of 2 components viz Preparatory Studies and Colour Theory and Practice.
Preparatory Studies component: Design principles and concept development for design are introduced. Critical and analytical thinking forms part of an introduction to creative thinking skills. Students also communicate ideas with story/mood boards. An understanding of design that has a positive ecological impact is introduced. Literacy and Language skills are practiced and assessed.
Colour theory and Practice 1 component: The primary learning objective is to bring students to a basic level of knowledge about colour theory and its applications in surface design, as well as the practical skills required to realize such applications. Observational drawing is practiced regularly.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PREPARATORY STUDIES 2

Pre-requisites: Preparatory Studies 1

Course outline: This subject consists of two components viz Preparatory Studies and Colour Theory and Practice.
Preparatory Studies component: Students reflect and journalize ideas with words and images. Design principles are considered and applied in preparation for repeat designs. Research is done for concept and an understanding for appropriate materials and techniques selection. An awareness of design decisions for social and economic impact is emphasized. Students draw and sketch for idea generation and representation. Story and mood boards form part of the liaison part of design decision making. Communication literacy and presentation skills are practised.
Colour Theory and Practice component: To design in colour, based on their knowledge of colour theory and their skills in the practical application thereof.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PREPARATORY STUDIES 3

Pre-requisites: Preparatory Studies 2

Course outline: To journalize and articulate narrative effectively and to plan and apply appropriate aspects of design elements and principles. Drawing skills are developed for idea generation, representation and drawing from imagination to communicate design ideas. To be able to use colour on all levels of expression, and to confidently use a variety of media relevant to the different projects. Students gain an understanding of the social and economic impact of their design decisions. Communication skills for research and product development are common practice.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE DESIGN 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: An understanding of visual literacy by the practice of design techniques and principles and the development of a designer's own identity forms part of the design process. Students create meaning and ideas by brainstorming for concept development and engage in exercises to re-evaluate problems in personal and contextual terms. Students are exposed to design for printing processes, silkscreen, knitting, fabric construction and paper techniques.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

SURFACE DESIGN 2

Pre-requisites: Surface Design 1

Course outline: New design techniques and principles are applied to a variety of surface design. A contextual understanding of how concept is used in the design of projects for lifestyle design. To educate socially oriented entrepreneurs within the creative design process. Critical thinking that allows for creativity and innovation. Students understand the techniques to design for silkscreen printing processes. Students comprehend 2-dimensional design and develop an understanding to create meaningful ethical design.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: Surface Design 2

Course outline: Students learn to communicate visual literacy innovatively and practice analytical and critical thinking that allows for creativity to emerge and to facilitate innovation. Students develop a contextualized understanding of concepts for social and lifestyle design projects. Students must create meaningful ethical design and are encouraged to include entrepreneurship within the creative process of design. Students develop an understanding of design for printing processes for a variety of substrates and materials.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE & DESIGN STUDIES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline:
This subject consists of two components viz:
History component: The first year History course provides insight into the history of art of European, Britain and the Eastern design, from antiquity to the end of the nineteenth century. This includes Ancient Civilizations, the Middle Ages and Islam, the Renaissance and Enlightenment and the Industrial Revolution.
Materials Theory component: During the first year, the subject concentrates on the major natural fibres, the cultivation thereof, production and characteristics as applicable to the end use of the fibre.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

SURFACE & DESIGN STUDIES 2

Pre-requisites: Surface & Design Studies 1

Course outline:
This subject consists of two components viz:
History component: The second year students gain insight into the 20th century Avant Garde movements and their effect on design. They focus on textiles, interiors and products. Cubism, Surrealism, Futurism and the influence of African design on these movements are included. Russian constructivist textiles, the Art Deco, Modernism and the Bauhaus periods are included for design inspiration and ornamental insight and understanding.
Materials Theory component: During the second year, the subject embeds material studies within the practical component, to deepen learning applicable to the end use.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE & DESIGN STUDIES 3

Pre-requisites: Surface & Design Studies 2

Course outline:
This subject consists of two components viz:
History component: The third year students obtain insight into the concept of personal language design. Design traditions; indigenous, historical and contemporary interpretations are researched. The body as surface, globalization and design for ethical consideration form part of the course content.
Materials studies component: Intelligent and ultra-performing materials are defined by the persistent pushing of boundaries. These inform new thinking and consideration of the environment. Repurposed, recycled and up cycled materials are considered as an alternative to save the environment and the country's resources. Students visit design studios that relate to practical assignments and this helps to prepare students for the industry.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

SURFACE DESIGN PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The first year Business Studies course is designed to introduce and develop Entrepreneurial thinking through interactive class sessions and activities. This introductory level is aimed at cultivating a competency in the language of business, while exposing the student to concepts in economics, human resources and general business management. Assessments are done on a continuous basis and consist of class tests, individual and group assignments as well as presentations. Class activities are designed to, not only foster a deeper understanding of the learning material, but also to develop the confidence and communication skills of the individuals.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE DESIGN PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisites: Surface Design Practice 1

Course outline: The second year Business Studies class includes interactive class discussions and activities. These sessions are aimed at deepening the understanding of business management concepts, through exposure to the fields of Marketing, Business Planning and Cash Flow Management. Case studies from the local and international design industry are used in class sessions to develop an appreciation of the value that business knowledge and understanding brings to designers. The assessments are done on a continuous basis and include class tests, individual and group assignments as well as class presentations. Class activities are designed to, not only foster a deeper understanding of the learning material, but also to develop the confidence and communication skills of the individuals.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE DESIGN PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Surface Design Practice 2

Course outline: The 3rd year Business Studies class includes interactive class discussions and activities. These sessions are aimed at preparing the individual for post-graduation through an increased focus on business start-up activities, spanning across legislative requirements, key financial concepts and operations management. The continuous assessments include class tests, individual and group assignments as well as presentations. The activities are designed to cultivate critical thinking around the interactive relationship between business and design, as well as to engage the student in retrospective personal development.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE DESIGN TECHNOLOGY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline:
This subject consists of 2 components viz:
Computer component: Students do storyboards for presentation and generate computer-aided designs. Design technology affords students the opportunity to work with intention and imagination to communicate design and to adapt as technology brings about new opportunities.
3 – Dimensional Design component: Students practice how to transform a 2-D material into a 3-D shape or surface, to understand the appropriate context and to become aware of the ecological impact thereof. Students test and learn the advantages and limitations of technique and materiality like paper and fabric. Textile printing, fabric construction like knitting, weaving and felting are introduced.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE DESIGN TECHNOLOGY 2

Pre-requisites: Surface Design Technology 1

Course outline: This subject consists of two components viz:
Computer component: Students learn new software to develop an idea, manipulation of designs, layout. To be able to use programs to aid, assist and apply to projects and to prepare for printing of wall coverings.
3-Dimensional Design component: The aim is to equip students with an understanding of how to translate and interpret the context with regard to material choice for a positive ecological result. Further exploration of technique and new materials is researched. Innovation for social design application and contextual need is practiced. Prior skills knowledge is applied for product development.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE DESIGN TECHNOLOGY 3

Pre-requisites: Surface Design Technology 2

Course outline: This subject consists of two components viz:
Computer component: Students learn to use the computer confidently for the development of an idea, manipulation of designs and layout. To be able to use programs to aid, assist and apply in the design process and it includes marketing of the student's body of work.
3-Dimensional Design component: Students design for the context with regard to material choice that has a positive ecological and social result. Theoretical and practical material research and an exploration of techniques and new materials is part of the process. Students are encouraged to engage in participatory design with NGO's and real life clients for social context. Product development happens in conjunction with a retail outlet. Students innovate for social design and for competitions.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: SURFACE DESIGN

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

SURFACE DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students learn to conceptualise and distinguish art / craft / design; understand properties of materials; investigation into fabric construction techniques; develop skills and techniques relating to processes; assess purpose and function of artefacts; recognise that all design is produced in, and for, a context. Surface design deals with the structuring, patterning, colouring and transformation of fabric, fibre and other materials. It focuses on creating 3-dimensional spaces and objects in a variety of media. Surface design is also an area of design which responds to social issues in our community through social design and design for development as examples of practicing design responsibly.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE & DESIGN STUDIES 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students must understand the research process and be in a position to prepare a research proposal - this is then extended into a dissertation, that supports the

practical component. The final written document should show a scholarly theoretical and critical approach. Demonstrate theoretical understanding – paying particular attention to the research problem, research questions (aims), the literature review and the methodology (method), and evaluate the outcome (conclusion). Demonstrate insight – showing a penetrating capacity which reflects critical insight, and both understanding and an ability to discern underlying meanings. Prove relevance – suitability and applicability to a particular issue/context. Show curiosity, and a spirit of enquiry. Show an ability to work independently as well as collaboratively. Show personal development and creative problem solving.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURFACE DESIGN TECHNOLOGY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Learn technical competence and skill, through experimentation and mastering of materials and processes; develop skills and produce a prototype, or artefacts/products – executed with craftsmanship of certainty and professionalism; demonstrate the capacity to use computer technology – Powerpoint, Photoshop, COREL Draw, and Illustrator; demonstrate an ability to function creatively in any professional design environment; demonstrate an understanding of aesthetic, economic and technological advancement and the influence of political, cultural, social and environmental trends in design; demonstrate flexibility and an ability to cope with fast-changing industry requirements. Appreciate and apply a sustainable philosophy – environmental, economic, and social.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

M TECH: DESIGN

Course aim

Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in any of the Design disciplines and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge. The Faculty offers reputable postgraduate design qualifications at Masters and Doctoral level. The Master of Technology (M Tech) and Doctor of Technology (D Tech) in the Design Programmes, places a high emphasis on applied research that addresses challenges facing society in diverse development milieu. By building up on undergraduate foundations in Communication/ Graphic Design; Industrial/Product Design; Fashion Design, Surface Design, Jewellery Design and Photography, candidates in the Masters programme often select topics that grapple with complex design problems. The socially conscious ethos encourages research in such fields as, inter alia, Design for Development, Design for Sustainability, Interaction Design, Participatory Design, Universal Design and User-Experience Design. The Master's degree can be attained as a full (100%) thesis, or a mini-dissertation/part practical output (50–50) qualification. Doctoral programmes are only offered as a full (100%) thesis.

Career opportunities

Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements

A B Tech in any Design programme with a pass in Research Methodology.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee

The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of course

A minimum of one calendar year full-time or two consecutive calendar years part-time. Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate on the prescribed application from which can be obtained from the University's website. The interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

M TECH: DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTDESR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
5	Year	R5DM01R	Thesis	C		8	120	1.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

D TECH: DESIGN

Course aim

Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in any of the design disciplines and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge. The Faculty offers reputable postgraduate design qualifications at Masters and Doctoral level. The Master of Technology (M Tech) and Doctor of Technology (D Tech) in the Design Programmes, places a high emphasis on applied research that addresses challenges facing society in diverse development milieu. By building up on undergraduate foundations in Communication/ Graphic Design; Industrial/Product Design; Fashion Design, Surface Design, Jewellery Design and Photography, candidates in the Masters programme often select topics that grapple with complex design problems. The socially conscious ethos encourages research in such fields as, inter alia, Design for Development, Design for Sustainability, Interaction Design, Participatory Design, Universal Design and User-Experience Design. The Master's degree can be attained as a full (100%) thesis, or a mini-dissertation/part practical output (50–50) qualification. Doctoral programmes are only offered as a full (100%) thesis.

Career opportunities

Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements

An M Tech Design or a recognised equivalent qualification.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee

The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of course

A minimum of two consecutive calendar years. Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate on the prescribed application from which can be obtained from the University's website. The interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

D TECH: DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: DTDESR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
6	Year	R6DD01R	Thesis	C		8	240	2.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the D Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

DEPARTMENT OFFICE-BEARERS

Position	Name	Telephone	Fax	E-mail
Head of Department	Post vacant	021 440 2277	021 440 2233	
Secretary	Ms C Pietersen	021 440 2232	021 440 2233	pietersenc@cput.ac.za

ACADEMIC STAFF (PERMANENT)

Name	Position	Qualifications
Post vacant	Head of Department	
Ms C Cocotos	Senior Lecturer	Masters of Des. Science, BAS, B Tech: Inter. Des.
Ms J Morkel	Senior Lecturer	B Arch, B Bldg, HDHET
Mr PR Perold	Senior Lecturer	MA (AfrStudies), B Arch, BAS
Ms M Rambhoros	Senior Lecturer	M Arch, B Arch Adv, BAS
Ms HE Voulgarelis	Senior Lecturer	B Arch, BBldg
Ms C Abrahamse	Lecturer	B Tech: Int. Des, ND: Int. Des, HDHET
Ms M Di Ruvo	Lecturer	M Tech: Int. Des, NHD Int. Des, ND: Int. Des.
Mr J Hopley	Lecturer	B Arch, BAS
Mr DH Jackson	Lecturer	M Tech: Const. Man, NHD: Arch, ND: Arch.
Mr MS Rodseth	Lecturer	B Arch
Mr JP Samuel,	Lecturer	B Arch, (MIA)
Mr PM Solomons	Lecturer	M Built Env. & Sust. Dev, NHD: Arch, ND: Arch, NHD: PSE
Ms T Mohamed	Junior Lecturer	B Tech: Arch. Tech, ND: Arch.Tech.
Mr N Naidoo	Junior Lecturer	NHD: Arch., NHD: PSE, ND: Arch.

QUALIFICATIONS OFFERED

Undergrad/ Postgrad	Qualification Type	Qual Code	Qualification Name	Campus Offered	Minimum Duration (Years)	Work-Integrated Learning
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDARCT	ND: Architectural Technology	Cape Town	3 Years	1 Year
Undergrad	Extended Curriculum	NDATFX	ND: Architectural Technology (Extended Curriculum)	Cape Town	4 Years	1 Year
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTARCT	B Tech: Architectural Technology (Full-time)	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTARCT	B Tech: Architectural Technology (Part-time)	Cape Town	2 Years	n/a
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTARCR	M Tech: Architectural Technology	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDINTD	ND: Interior Design	Cape Town	3 Years	1 Year
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDIDFX	ND: Interior Design (Extended Curriculum)	Cape Town	4 Years	1 Year
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTINTD	B Tech: Interior Design (Full-time)	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTINTD	B Tech: Interior Design (Part-Time)	Cape Town	2 Years	n/a
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTINTD	M Tech: Interior Design	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY

Course aim

Graduates are competent architectural technologists who can conduct relevant routine technical research and perform, under supervision, architectural services in presentation, documentation, specification, construction design, detailing, administration, planning and design in the public and private, formal and informal sectors of the built environment.

Career opportunities

The architectural technologist may opt for employment in an architectural practice. She/he may assist senior staff with drawing, detailing, and presentations and by doing site supervision, as well as monitoring and liaising with clients, engineers, municipalities, quantity surveyors and contractors.

Once the necessary experience has been gained, the architectural technologist is competent to handle small to medium size work independently.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)*

One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 4 (adequate achievement: 50 - 59%))
Maths Literacy 6 (meritorius achievement: 70 - 79%)

Submission of prescribed portfolio

In addition to the minimum admission requirements as stated above, applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work, in accordance with the specifications of the Department and to write an aptitude, language and mathematics proficiency test.

Professional registration

Graduates can apply to the South African Council for the Architectural Profession (SACAP) for registration as Candidate Architectural Technologists.

Duration of course

Full time over a period of three years. The entire second year is spent working for an architectural practice that has been accredited by the University, with weekly visits to the Department.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDARCT

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	ABS 101S	Applied Building Science 1	C		5	20.04	0.165	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CMM 102S	Communication 1	C		5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CAD 101S	Computer Aided Draughting 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	COA 101S	Computer Applications 1	C		5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CTD 100S	Construction & Detailing 1	C		5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	HAA 100S	History & Appreciation of Architecture 1	C		5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRE 100S	Presentation 1	C		5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	STW 100S	Studio Work 1	C		5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ATR 200S	Architectural Technology Practice 2 (WIL)	C		5	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CTD 200S	Construction & Detailing 2	C	CTD 100S	5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PSS 200S	Practical Studies 2	C		5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	STW 200S	Studio Work 2	C	STW 100S	5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	BSV 300S	Building Services 3	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	CTD 300S	Construction & Detailing 3	C	CTD 200S	6	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	OFP 300S	Office Practice 3	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PAD 300S	Principles of Architectural Design 3	C		6	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	STW 300S	Studio Work 3	C	STW 200S	6	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	SAL 300S	Survey & Landscaping 3	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 18

PROMOTION CRITERIA

Promotion to the 2nd year of study
Students will only be promoted to the second year, once they have passed Studio Work 1, Presentation 1, Construction and Detailing 1 and at least three of the other subjects.

Promotion to the 3rd year of study
Students will only be promoted to the third year once they have passed all of the first and second year subjects, or have gained credits for these subjects and have satisfactorily completed their Work-Integrated Learning.

General promotion requirements

A minimum overall end-of semester or end-of-year mark of 50% is required in order to pass any subject.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- Students who fail 50% or more of their subjects in any given year, or who fail any subject on the same level twice, will not be re-admitted to the course.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for eg extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. Such conditions may require the student to abstain from studying for a period of one year. During this year, such a student will be required to work for an architectural practice. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

Course aim

Unsuccessful applicants may be referred to the Extended First Year Curriculum Programme which enables applicants who are under-prepared and who show appropriate potential, to complete a designated course of study in a minimum of four years (the first year is done over a period of two years). The Extended Curriculum Programme is an extension of the first year of the mainstream Architectural Technology programme. On completion of the Foundation Programme, students will integrate with the mainstream programme, provided that they pass all of the subjects in the Foundation Programme in the minimum time.

Students are introduced to basic terminology of Architecture. The human body and its relation to the environment is explored, touching on theoretical and philosophical principles of design, experiential relationships that exists between the body and its surrounding space by drawing attention to the sensory engagement thereof, as well as touching on our perception of space in relation to space and movement by means of bodily engagement. Students are taught how to structure and discipline themselves in order to meet deadlines which will aid them throughout their educational and professional career.

Career opportunities

The architectural technologist may opt for employment in an architectural practice. She/he may assist senior staff with drawing, detailing, presentations and by doing site supervision, as well as monitoring and liaising with clients, engineers, municipalities, quantity surveyors and contractors.

Once the necessary experience has been gained, the architectural technologist is competent to handle small to medium size work independently.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)*

One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 4 (adequate achievement: 50 - 59%)
Maths Literacy 6 (meritorius achievement: 70 - 79%)

Duration of course

Four years on a full-time basis (the first year is done over two years).

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

ND: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDATFX

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
FOUNDATION YEAR										
0	Year	COA10SX	Computer Applications 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	HAA10SX	History & Appreciation of Architecture 1A	C		5A	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	ABS10SX	Applied Building Science 1A	C		5A	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	CMM10SX	Communication 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	CON10SX	Construction & Detailing 1A	C		5A	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	PRE10SX	Presentation 1A	C		5A	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	STW10SX	Studio Work 1A	C		5A	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
FIRST YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
1	Year	HAA100S	History & Appreciation of Architecture 1	C	HAA10SX	5B	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	ABS101S	Applied Building Science 1	C	ABS10SX	5B	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CMM102S	Communication 1	C	CMM10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CTD100S	Construction & Detailing 1	C	CON10SX	5B	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRE100S	Presentation 1	C	PRE10SX	5B	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	STW100S	Studio Work 1	C	STW10SX	5B	14.4	0.120	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CAD101S	Computer Aided Draughting 1	C	COA10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
SECOND YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
2	Year	ATR 200S	Architectural Technology Practice 2 (WIL)	C		5	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CTD 200S	Construction & Detailing 2	C	CTD100S	5	10.08	0.084	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PSS 200S	Practical Studies 2	C		5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	STW 200S	Studio Work 2	C	STW100S	5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes
THIRD YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
3	Year	BSV 300S	Building Services 3	C		6	13.2	0.110	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	CTD 300S	Construction & Detailing 3	C	CTD200S	6	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	OFP 300S	Office Practice 3	C		6	9.6	0.080	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PAD 300S	Principles of Architectural Des. 3	C		6	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	STW 300S	Studio Work 3	C	STW200S	6	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	SAL 300S	Survey & Landscaping 3	C		6	13.2	0.110	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 18

Academic exclusion rules & appeal procedure

The academic exclusion rules and appeal procedure are exactly the same as that applicable to the mainstream National Diploma programme.

B TECH: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY

Course aim

Graduates are equipped to be senior architectural technologists capable of independently researching technological innovations, performing professional architecture services in technology, design and management in the public and private sectors of the built environment.

Graduates can apply to the South African Council for the Architectural Profession (SACAP) for registration as Candidate Senior Architectural Technologists.

Career opportunities

The Senior Architectural Technologist is responsible for the application of construction technology in the design process. The main activities associated with this field are the production of drawings, detailing, presentation of drawings, model making, site supervision and monitoring and liaison with clients, engineers, municipalities, quantity surveyors and contractors.

Once the necessary experience has been gained, the Senior Architectural Technologist is able to competently handle small to medium size work independently.

Admission requirements

A National Diploma in Architectural Technology (or a recognized equivalent qualification) with a 60% average pass mark in the final year of the National Diploma. Applicants must also obtain a minimum of 60% for the subject "Principles of Architectural Design 3". Applicants who do not meet these requirements, or who completed their National Diploma (or equivalent qualification) at another institution, are subjected to a selection process. This process will consist of a design and theory evaluation, an interview and the submission of a portfolio. The portfolio should comprise of any work which the student may consider to be a reflection of his/her technological, design and presentation abilities. CPUT students must submit their best 3rd year design piece and the entire 3rd year MIP including the Studio Work component. Applicants from other universities must submit their final year work demonstrating an integration of design and technology.

Interview and portfolio

Interviews with applicants will be conducted during the first week of December at CPUT. At the interview, applicants will be required to present a portfolio of appropriate architectural and technological work completed by them. Details of the portfolio requirements will be supplied on request.

Part-time applicants should bring a letter of support that confirms that they will be mentored by a SACAP registered Professional Architect or Senior Technologist.

Design and technology test

Applicants may be required to complete a Design test and Theory assignment.

Duration of course

Full-time: One year
Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

B TECH: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY FULL-TIME

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTARCT

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	APD 400S	Applied Design 4	C		7	72	0.600	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	AES 400S	Architectural Environmental Studies 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	URD 400S	Principles of Urban Design 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	CDR400S	Construction & Detailing 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	THD 400S	Theory of Design 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 5

B TECH: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY PART-TIME

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTARCT

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	APD401S	Applied Design 4 (Project)	C		7	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	APD402S	Applied Design 4 (Major Proj)	C	APD401S	7	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	AES 400S	Architectural Environmental Studies 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	CDR 401S	Construction & Detailing 4 (Project)	C		7	6	0.050	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	CDR402S	Construction & Detailing 4 (Major Project)	C	CDR 401S	7	6	0.050	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	URD 400S	Principles of Urban Design 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	THD 400S	Theory of Design 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 5

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

M TECH: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY

Course aim
Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in architectural technology and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge.

Course structure
This programme consists of a comprehensive full research project culminating in a thesis. For the duration of the course, the student is placed under the guidance of an approved supervisor(s) who will assist and guide the candidate throughout his / her studies.

In their thesis, Master's candidates must prove that they understand a particular problem in the industry in which they have done their research, are able to analyse and set it out logically, are able to arrive at logical conclusions or a diagnosis of the problem and are then able to make proposals for the improvement / elimination of the problem. The research problem, its justification, process and outcome are reported in a thesis. The thesis must comply with the normal general technical requirements and rules with regard to scope, quality and layout.

Career opportunties
Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements
A B Tech: Architectural Technology with a pass in Research Methodology.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee
The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of studies
A minimum of one calendar year full-time or two consecutive calendar years part-time. Students who wish to interrupt their studies, must apply to Senate on the prescribed application form which can be obtained from the University's website. The interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

M TECH: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTARCR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
5	Year	R1M5047	Thesis	C		8	120	1.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

INTERRUPTION OF STUDIES

Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate. The interruption of studies form (HDC 1.9) is available on the Centre for Postgraduate Studies website. Interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY PRACTICE 2 (WORK INTEGRATED LEARNING)

Pre-requisites: Studio Work 1, Construction and Detailing 1, Presentation 1

Course outline: Practical Studies 2 and Architectural Technology Practice 2 are two inseparable subjects. Architecture students are required to do Work Integrated Learning (WIL) for a period of 10 months in a practice that is registered with SACAP. Practical requirements are set out in the study guides. As part of the evaluation, the coordinator will visit all practices during the said year to discuss student progress. Log sheets provided should be completed on a weekly basis and should be signed off by the office manager. Second year architecture students attend 4 block weeks during the year. “Construction and Detailing 2” and “Studio Work 2” are assessed after the completion of the block week and the other two subjects viz “Architectural Technology Practice 2” and ”Practical Studies 2” are assessed at the end of the year.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLIED BUILDING SCIENCE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The purpose of this course is to promote an awareness of calculations, science and the environment and how material selection affects design of buildings.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

BUILDING SERVICES 3

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: A basic general knowledge of various different services accommodated within buildings and to encourage an appreciation for space requirements for services; developing abilities to make observations and realise the importance of services co-ordination and integration within buildings. Developing familiarity with the National Building Regulations relating to the elements listed in the subject content.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

COMPUTER AIDED DRAUGHTING 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Production of architectural and graphic drawings on a personal computer; developing the hands on skills and competency required to produce computer generated architectural drawings at an acceptable production rate. Archicad forms the basis of instruction.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

COMPUTER APPLICATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Computer Application entails hands on, practical experience dealing with an introduction to the purpose of using computers and an overview of the hardware components of computer systems.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATION 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: A course designed to help students to improve their verbal (written and spoken) as well as non-verbal communication and to understand the conventions of the world of work. Students need to develop confidence and determination to communicate in effective ways in their interaction with others.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CONSTRUCTION & DETAILING 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Construction and Detailing aims to provide the student with a thorough knowledge of current, general practice pertaining to contemporary building techniques for low- rise domestic buildings.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CONSTRUCTION & DETAILING 2

Pre-requisites: Studio Work 1, Construction and Detailing 1, Presentation 1

Course outline: Second year architecture students are required to attend 4 block weeks during the year while they are busy with their in-service training. Students are required to attend a compulsory 1 week block session per term. Construction and Detailing 2 and Studio Work 2 are assessed after the completion of the block week.
Students are advised to consult the second year coordinator for more information relating to this subject.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CONSTRUCTION & DETAILING 3

Pre-requisites: Construction & Detailing 2

Course outline: Comprises of theory and practical; the theoretical portion will be presented by means of lectures, site and factory visits, workshops etc. and will be supported by practical exercises designed to develop what has been learned theoretically. Investigates materials, techniques and structural systems and methods associated with building types which are not load bearing. Critical analytical and investigative skills are emphasised as is the professional and practical application of the theoretical knowledge gained.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HISTORY & APPRECIATION OF ARCHITECTURE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: An introduction to critical understanding of design precedent that which came before. It examines the development of architectural and interior design from the earliest times to the present. The relevance of underlying principles to contemporary design problems is assessed. Students should be conversant with the National Building regulations relating to the elements listed in the subject content.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

OFFICE PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Introduction to the business and administrative realities of the Architectural Professional; a series of lectures covers the Profession, Code of Conduct, other professionals allied to the building industry, the fundamentals of setting up an Architectural Practice, Tendering and the Building Contract. This course is an introduction to the topics and subjects of the external examination that candidates will need to write in order to register as members of the Architectural Profession.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRACTICAL STUDIES 2

Pre-requisites: Studio Work 1, Construction and Detailing 1, Presentation 1

Course outline: Practical Studies 2 and Architectural Technology Practice 2 are two inseparable subjects. It relates to the practical work that is done in the office on a daily basis. These subjects involve: filling in a log sheet of work done in the office, creating a portfolio of work done in the office; reflecting in writing on the work done in the office as part of a portfolio; local authority approval, working drawings and details, measured drawings, presentation, schedules, joinery, investigation of site and survey; analysis and preparation of the brief; cost considerations; specifications; site visits and administration experience.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRESENTATION 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: After completion of this course the student should be able to communicate graphically, apply and understand the fundamental principles of architectural presentation, in order, for example, to be able to complete a simple set of sketch plans.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRINCIPLES OF ARCHITECTURAL DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: A project-based subject that integrates with the subjects Studio Work and Construction and Detailing. Students learn about the design process, the formulation of design ideas and the conceptual aspects of architectural design. Projects will start with simple, small scaled projects and become more complex towards the end of the year. The use of models as design tools, freehand drawings and effective presentation is emphasized.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

STUDIO WORK 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Practical hands-on experience in producing architectural drawings and designs on the drawing board and using computer aided draughting in a studio environment and the opportunity to apply and integrate knowledge from other subjects.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

STUDIO WORK 2

Pre-requisites: Studio Work 1, Construction and Detailing 1, Presentation 1

Course outline: Second year architecture students are required to attend 4 block weeks during the year while they are busy with their in-service training. Students are required to attend a compulsory 1 week block session per term. Construction and Detailing 2 and Studio Work 2 are assessed after the completion of the block week.
Students are advised to consult the second year coordinator for more information relating to this subject.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

STUDIO WORK 3

Pre-requisites: Studio Work 2

Course outline: A project-based subject that integrates with the subjects Principles of Architectural Design and Construction and Detailing. Design skills and technical knowledge gained will be utilized in performing analyses and doing projects which pertain to the technical

aspects of architectural design. Knowledge of framed construction obtained in second year will be expanded, and the skills necessary to design and document more complex structural components gained, including roofs, staircases and building facades, prepare technical drawings for council submission, as well as full construction documentation (working drawings).

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SURVEY & LANDSCAPING 3

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Survey and Landscaping is a supporting subject that deals with the landscape around and between buildings. The subject will be taught in block periods with theory and application in projects.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

APPLIED BUILDING SCIENCE 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject attempts to bring students up to speed with their numeracy and mathematic skills to prepare them for first year.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATION 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject teaches the student how to communicate in a professional manner within the disciplines of Architecture. This subject looks at the usage of correct grammar and sentence construction, vocabulary and comprehension.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CONSTRUCTION & DETAILING 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This integrated subject deals with basic material properties and their different functions within a space. To aid the communication of the design intent, basic joinery and construction details are explored.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HISTORY & APPRECIATION OF ARCHITECTURE 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: History & Appreciation of Architecture attempts to explore the basic theory and philosophy behind design which is used to substantiate the design intent.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRESENTATION 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Graphically communicate through drawing, the nature and application of drawing, development of a free hand sketching and drawing approach, graphic depiction of the human figure, buildings, drawing as a design tool, principles of composition, the conventional 2D and 3D-projections, shadow projection, compilation of sets of sketch plans.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

STUDIO WORK 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Studio Work is one of the major components of the curriculum. The subject focuses on anthropometrics, the human dimensions in relation to space, identity, space-making, place-making, space in context, narratives and construction of spaces. Students are taught how to approach design and the making thereof from an intuitive point of view. Design themes: identity, space-making, place making, my space in context, narratives and construction of spaces.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: ARCHITECTURAL TECHNOLOGY

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

APPLIED DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The Applied Design course stimulates the development of creative solutions to architectural problems via the establishment of design methodologies. Whilst the course instruction and project selection allow students to develop analytical, problem-solving and communication skills; life skills are also stressed that will foster positive attitudes, and a sense of responsibility, as well as developing a social consciousness.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ARCHITECTURAL ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This course brings to awareness the scarcity of natural resources, and teaches students to respond appropriately through sustainable development and environmental design in the field of architecture which encompasses utilizing emerging technologies, selecting materials responsibly, and designing for human comfort.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CONSTRUCTION & DETAILING 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The Construction and Detailing course develops knowledge of the making of buildings as a basis for good design; by fostering technological consideration and innovation as integral parts of the design process, whilst instilling an appreciation of the art of construction as a basis for the making of good architecture. It provides a sound technological, ethical and practical basis for conceptual and detail design decisions, and for the selection of appropriate materials and methods.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRINCIPLES OF URBAN DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This course enables students to meaningfully co-ordinate architectural design with urban elements and the immediate surroundings of buildings. It encourages the identification and analysis of good or weak points in urban design, and to reinforce or rectify these points in creative designs that are within the restrictions and guidelines of urban plans and controlling regulations.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Theory of Design 4 introduces students to a process of creativity that engenders individual approaches to idea generation in architectural design. It stimulates intellectual, analytical, conceptual and graphic and writing skills to formulate coherent architectural arguments, as well as to develop design methodologies in order to solve architectural problems. The course also fosters understanding of both current and past architectural philosophies and movements.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: INTERIOR DESIGN

Course aim

The practice of interior design relates to architecture on the one hand and to industrial design on the other. The aim of the course is to develop awareness and skills ranging from design in building to furniture design, and could be defined as the creative problem-solving process applied to the practical solution of three-dimensional problems, primarily within the environment of buildings.

The course objectives are:
To develop a critical awareness and practical application of two- and specifically three-dimensional design principles; to create awareness of the commercial applications of design; to encourage understanding of the responsibility of the designer to society and the individual user; To draw on historical and contemporary studies in order to heighten design awareness; to provide the opportunity to acquire knowledge of the performance of materials and how they can be applied to construction; to develop the skills required to communicate the design intention.

Career opportunities

The following employment opportunities are available:

- Interior design firms offering a professional consultancy service to clients, offer the opportunity to work towards a partnership, or with experience, to establish a practice;
- Shop-fitting firms providing a design and supply service for the installation of shop and office interiors;
- Retail groups planning their own interiors and employing shop-fitters on a contract basis for installation;
- Furniture manufacturers offering a contract or design and supply service;
- Interior design shops and suppliers of office furniture offering a design service;
- Architectural practices also employ interior design specialists in their design teams.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)*
One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%)
Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

Recommended Senior Certificate subject:
Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)

Submission of prescribed portfolio

In addition to the minimum admission requirements as stated above, applicants are required to submit a prescribed portfolio of art work, in accordance with the specifications of the Department and to write an aptitude, language and mathematics proficiency test.

Duration of course
Three years on a full-time basis, including a period of work integrated learning in the third year at a company that has been accredited by the University.

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: INTERIOR DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDINTD

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	DST 101S	Design Studies 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	DET 100S	Design Technology 1	C		5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	DRA 101S	Drawing for Design 1	C		5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	HIA 100S	History of Art & Design 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PDP 100S	Professional Design Pract 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	DET 200S	Design Technology 2	C	DET 100S	5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	DEY 200S	Design Theory 2	C	HIA 100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ITD 200S	Interior Design 2	C	DST 101S	5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PSM 200S	Presentation Methods 2	C	DRA 101S	5	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PDP 200S	Professional Design Pract 2	C	PDP 100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DET 300S	Design Technology 3	C	DET 200S	6	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DEY 300S	Design Theory 3	C	DEY 200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	ITD 300S	Interior Design 3	C	ITD 200S	6	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	IDP 300S	Interior Design Practice 3	C	None	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PSM 300S	Presentation Methods 3	C	PSM 200S	6	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PDP 300S	Professional Design Pract 3	C	PDP 200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 16

PROMOTION CRITERIA

A student will be promoted to the next year of study, provided that all subjects are passed in the year concerned.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- Students who fail 50% or more of their subjects in any given year, or who fail any subject on the same level twice, will not be re-admitted to the course.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for eg extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: INTERIOR DESIGN (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

Course aim

Unsuccessful applicants may be referred to the Extended First Year Curriculum Programme which enables applicants who are under-prepared and who show appropriate potential, to complete a designated course of study in a minimum of four years (the first year is done over a period of two years). The Extended Curriculum Programme is an extension of the first year of the mainstream Interior Design programme.

Students are introduced to basic terminology of Interior Design. The human body and its relation to the environment is explored, touching on theoretical and philosophical principles of design, experiential relationships that exists between the body and its surrounding space by drawing attention to the sensory engagement thereof, as well as touching on our perception of space in relation to space and movement by means of bodily engagement. Students are taught how to structure and discipline themselves in order to meet deadlines which will aid them throughout their educational and professional career.

Career opportunities

The following employment opportunities are available:

- Interior design firms offering a professional consultancy service to clients, offer the opportunity to work towards a partnership, or with experience, to establish a practice;
- Shop-fitting firms providing a design and supply service for the installation of shop and office interiors;
- Retail groups planning their own interiors and employing shop-fitters on a contract basis for installation;
- Furniture manufacturers offering a contract or design and supply service;
- Interior design shops and suppliers of office furniture offering a design service;
- Architectural practices also employ interior design specialists in their design teams.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)*
One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%)
Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

Recommended Senior Certificate subject:
Design 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)

Duration of course

Four years on a full-time basis (the first year is done over two years).

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

ND: INTERIOR DESIGN (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDIDFX

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
FOUNDATION YEAR										
0	Year	DSN10SX	Design Studies 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	DET10SX	Design Technology 1A	C		5A	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	DRD10SX	Drawing for Design 1A	C		5A	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	HIA10SX	History of Art & Design 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
0	Year	PDP10SX	Professional Design Practice 1A	C		5A	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
FIRST YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
1	Year	DST 101S	Design Studies 1	C	DSN10SX	5B	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	DET 100S	Design Technology 1	C	DET10SX	5B	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	DRA 101S	Drawing for Design 1	C	DRD10SX	5B	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	HIA 100S	History of Art & Design 1	C	HIA10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PDP 100S	Professional Design Practice 1	C	PDP10SX	5B	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
SECOND YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
2	Year	DET 200S	Design Technology 2	C	DET 100S	5	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	DEY 200S	Design Theory 2	C	HIA 100S	5	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ITD 200S	Interior Design 2	C	DST 101S	5	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PSM 200S	Presentation Methods 2	C	DRA 101S	5	27	0.225	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PDP 200S	Professional Design Practice 2	C	PDP 100S	5	9	0.075	Continuous	Yes
THIRD YEAR (MAINSTREAM PROGRAMME)										
3	Year	DET 300S	Design Technology 3	C	DET 200S	6	21.6	0.180	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DEY 300S	Design Theory 3	C	DEY 200S	6	8.64	0.072	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	ITD 300S	Interior Design 3	C	ITD 200S	6	21.6	0.180	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	IDP 300S	Interior Design Practice 3 (WIL)	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PSM 300S	Presentation Methods 3	C	PSM 200S	6	17.52	0.146	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PDP 300S	Professional Design Practice 3	C	PDP 200S	6	8.64	0.072	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 16

Academic exclusion rules & appeal procedure

The academic exclusion rules and appeal procedure are exactly the same as that applicable to the mainstream National Diploma programme.

B TECH: INTERIOR DESIGN

Course aim
This course offers the opportunity to specialise in areas in the field of interior design.

Career opportunities
The following employment opportunities are available:
- Interior design firms offering a professional consultancy service to clients, offer the opportunity to work towards a partnership, or with experience, to establish a practice;
- Shop-fitting firms providing a design and supply service for the installation of shop and office interiors;
- Retail groups planning their own interiors and employing shop-fitters on a contract basis for installation;
- Furniture manufacturers offering a contract or design and supply service;
- Interior design shops and suppliers of office furniture offering a design service;
- Architectural practices also employ interior design specialists in their design teams.

Admission requirements
A National Diploma in Interior Design or a recognised equivalent qualification with an average of 60% in the final year of the National Diploma, or with two years appropriate industry-related experience is required.

Portfolio and written proposal
Applicants must submit a portfolio of appropriate interior design solutions for the corporate, retail and hospitality sectors, including technological work related to these projects. A written dissertation proposal highlighting areas of design interest and the necessity for the proposed research must also be submitted. The proposal must be a minimum of 8 pages. Further details about the proposal requirements will be supplied on request.

Programme structure
This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor who will assist in both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course.

Assessment
At the end of the period of study, the student must have completed a written report and a body of work, which will be exhibited on campus. A panel of staff, assisted by external moderators, will assess the exhibition. Students must satisfy the external moderators that they have fulfilled the requirements towards the Degree.

Duration of course
Full-time: One year
Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

B TECH: INTERIOR DESIGN FULL-TIME

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTINTD

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	DET 400S	Design Technology 4	C		7	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	DEY 400S	Design Theory 4	C		7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	ITD 400S	Interior Design 4	C		7	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PSM 400S	Presentation Methods 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PDP 400S	Professional Design Prac 4	C		7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 5

B TECH: INTERIOR DESIGN PART-TIME

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTINTD

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	DET 401S	Design Technology 4 (Project)	C		7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	DET 402S	Design Technology 4 (Major Integrated Project)	C	DET 401S	7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	DEY 400S	Design Theory 4	C		7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	ITD 401S	Interior Design 4 (Project)	C		7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	ITD 402S	Interior Design 4 (Major Integrated Project)	C	ITD 401S	7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PSM 400S	Presentation Methods 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PDP 400S	Professional Design Practice 4	C		7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 5

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

M TECH: INTERIOR DESIGN

Course aim

Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in interior design and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge. The Faculty offers reputable postgraduate design qualifications at Masters and Doctoral level. The Master of Technology (M Tech) and Doctor of Technology (D Tech) in the Design Programmes, places a high emphasis on applied research that addresses challenges facing society in diverse development milieu. By building up on undergraduate foundations in Communication/Graphic Design; Industrial/Product Design; Interior Design; Fashion Design, Surface Design, Jewellery Design and Photography, candidates in the Masters programme often select topics that grapple with complex design problems. The socially conscious ethos encourages research in such fields as, inter alia, Design for Development, Design for Sustainability, Interaction Design, Participatory Design, Universal Design and User-Experience Design. The Master's degree can be attained as a full (100%) thesis, or a mini-dissertation/part practical output (50–50) qualification. Doctoral programmes are only offered as a full (100%) thesis.

Career opportunities

Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements

A B Tech: Interior Design and a pass in Research Methodology.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee

The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Programme structure

This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor who will assist in both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course. .

Duration of studies

A minimum of one calendar year full-time or two consecutive calendar years part-time. Students who wish to interrupt their studies, must apply to Senate on the prescribed application form which can be obtained from the University's website. The interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

M TECH: INTERIOR DESIGN

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTINTD

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
5	Year	R5INT1R	Thesis	C		8	120	1.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE ND: INTERIOR DESIGN

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

DESIGN STUDIES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject represents one of the programme majors and introduces the design student to creative and functionally ergonomic layouts that are planned to meet particular needs and occupancy.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN TECHNOLOGY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject is comprised of three areas of study and represents a major subject in the programme that continues from first year until third year. The three areas are: Construction Technology; Materials & Finishes and Building Services. Students will be made aware of the effects building services has on the interiors of buildings. Elements such as lighting and ventilation, ergonomics and anthropometrics are discussed in terms of technical conventions and design projects.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN TECHNOLOGY 2

Pre-requisites: Design Technology 1

Course outline: This subject is comprised of three areas of study and represents a major subject in the programme that continues from first year until third year. The three areas are: Construction Drawings, Materials & Finishes and Building Services. It introduces relevant physical and visual properties of a wide range of building materials. Students are expected to use the terminology and explain their selections in their designs. The subject encourages an active understanding of the specification of materials and finishes that exceed their specification for merely aesthetic purposes

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN TECHNOLOGY 3

Pre-requisites: Design Technology 2

Course outline: This subject consists of three components; Construction Drawings, Materials and Finishes and Building Services. A portion is also generated from the design project where a student should pay attention to the various building components, services and materials specified.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN THEORY 2

Pre-requisites: History of Art & Design 1

Course outline: This subject investigates movements and periods that are influential in the twentieth century including the Avant Garde, Art Deco, Bauhaus, Modernism, Design from 1950 - 1980 economic and political context. The social, political and financial influences for each movement are analysed and discussed in terms of their influences on the design of the times. There is a focus on the emergence of Interior Design as a professional discipline. To assist design development and critical thinking, students will also be introduced to a variety of theoretical frameworks which can be applied to interior design.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN THEORY 3

Pre-requisites: Design Theory 2

Course outline: At this level of the programme, the theory focuses on various theoretical frameworks which can be applied to interior design. The programme does not focus on historical texts but rather challenges students to research and interpret current philosophical and social theories to understand how these can be incorporated into successful designs.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DRAWING FOR DESIGN 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject is comprised of three modules that introduce the different drawing and rendering techniques viz Colour, Perspective Drawing and Technical Drawing conventions.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HISTORY OF ART & DESIGN 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Good design is always grounded in a good, critical understanding of design precedent - that which came before. In the history course we look at the development of architectural and interior design from the earliest times to the present. We assess the relevance of the underlying principles to our contemporary design problems.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INTERIOR DESIGN 2

Pre-requisites: Design Studies 1

Course outline: Explores the conceptualisation, planning and execution of various interior spaces; identify a strong branding / corporate identity and develop functional, aesthetic and hazard-free interior spaces that fulfil the needs of their occupants; resolve their concepts into practical solutions by investigating available construction methods, materials and finishes and building services.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INTERIOR DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: Interior Design 2

Course outline: Focuses on creative and practical solutions of interior spaces from initial conceptualisation to planning and zoning, three dimensional design development and integrated technical and construction knowledge, demonstrate an understanding of branding / corporate identity and develop functional, aesthetic and hazard-free interior spaces; resolve their concepts into practical and sustainable solutions by incorporating recognised/available construction methods, materials, finishes and building services.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INTERIOR DESIGN PRACTICE 3 (WORK INTEGRATED LEARNING)

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students in their third year of study are expected to do 6 weeks of experiential training (internship). The process starts early in the year. Students are required to submit a CV and a covering letter to the experiential training officer. Should a student wish to work for a particular company; the officer will assist him or her to make the initial contact. Since this is most students last year of study, it is important to invest time and effort into making a good impression with the company. The outcome is monitored through a report compiled during the internship period that students are to submit upon their return after the 6 weeks.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRESENTATION METHODS 2

Pre-requisites: Drawing for Design 1

Course outline: Explore and demonstrate competency in various CAD graphic techniques. Computer programmes such as AutoCAD, Artlantis, SketchUp and Photoshop are taught in the computer lab. Develop and rendered interior plans, sections and elevations and perspective views using various media, overall page layouts and typography. Students are encouraged to include all thumbnail / developmental sketches in their presentations.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRESENTATION METHODS 3

Pre-requisites: Presentation Methods 2

Course outline: Students are required to explore and demonstrate competency in various CAD graphic techniques. Computer programmes such as AutoCAD, Artlantis and Photoshop are taught in the computer lab. The successful communication of proposals includes succinctly developed and rendered interior plans, sections and elevations and perspective views using various media. Overall page layouts and typography also need to be considered. Students are encouraged to include developmental sketches as well as info graphics in their presentations. Details of all designed components are encouraged.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL DESIGN PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This course is designed to help students improve their verbal (written and spoken) as well as non-verbal communication and to understand the conventions of the world of work. Students need to develop confidence and determination to communicate in effective ways their interaction with others.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL DESIGN PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisites: Professional Design Practice 1

Course outline: Professional Design Practice 2 looks into Ethics and codes of conduct consistent with the design field. It elaborates on entrepreneurship and the various alternatives available to entrepreneurs in the field of work.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL DESIGN PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Professional Design Practice 2

Course outline: Professional Design Practice 3 looks specifically into the professional practice of Interior Designers. The subject is framed around the recommended contracting procedures and schedule programming pertaining to various contracting types that define the interior designer‘s scope of service. It also defines the ethics and codes of conduct consistent with professional practice and as set out by the South African Institute for the Interior Design professions

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: INTERIOR DESIGN (EXTENDED CURRICULUM PROGRAMME)

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

DESIGN STUDIES 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: It is one of the major components of the curriculum. It focuses on anthropometrics, the human dimensions in relation to space, identity, space-making, place-making, space in context, narratives, construction of spaces. Students are taught how to approach design and the making thereof from an intuitive point of view.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DRAWING FOR DESIGN 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Graphically communicate through drawing, the nature and application of drawing, development of a free hand sketching and drawing approach, graphic depiction of the human figure, buildings, drawing as a design tool, principles of composition, the conventional 2D and 3D-projections, shadow projection, compilation of sets of sketch plans.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN TECHNOLOGY 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This integrated subject deals with basic material properties and their different functions within a space. To aid the communication of the design intent, basic joinery and construction details are explored.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HISTORY OF ART & DESIGN 1A

Course outline: The subject attempts to explore the basic theory and philosophy behind design which are used to substantiate the design intent.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

PROFESSIONAL DESIGN PRACTICE 1A

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject teaches the student how to communicate in a professional manner within the discipline of Interior Design. This subject looks at the usage of correct grammar and sentence construction; vocabulary and comprehension. It also attempts to bring students up to speed with their numeracy and mathematical skills to prepare them for first year.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: INTERIOR DESIGN

DESIGN THEORY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Theory of Design introduces students to a process of creativity that engenders individual approaches to idea generation in interior design. It stimulates intellectual, analytical, conceptual and graphic, and writing skills to formulate coherent interior arguments, as well as to develop design methodologies in order to solve problems.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DESIGN TECHNOLOGY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students will demonstrate the ability to implement innovative application of construction methods and uses for materials related to load-bearing interior fit-out systems, adaptive re-use and additions. The demands of context, local resources and appropriate technologies in response to the host building, which influence the construction of an interior will be recognised. Develop advanced research into construction methods and materials and the appropriate applications

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INTERIOR DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Interior Design 4 stimulates the development of creative solutions to interior problems via the establishment of design methodologies. Whilst the course instruction and project selection allow students to develop analytical, problem solving and communication skills; life skills are also stressed that will foster positive attitudes, and a sense of responsibility, as well as developing a social consciousness.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRESENTATION METHODS 4

Course outline: Develop the ability to present the design synthesis in a logical manner, using freehand process work, as well as computer generated drawings. The final specialised design project will be presented using a computer generated fly-through.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

PROFESSIONAL DESIGN PRACTICE 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The selection and provision of all contract documentation that facilitate pricing, procurement and installation of specified items. The provision of project management services, including preparation of project budgets and schedules. The preparation of construction documents that adhere to the National Building Regulations, the regional building and fire codes, municipal codes, and any other jurisdictional statutes, regulations and guidelines applicable to the interior space.

DEPARTMENT OFFICE-BEARERS

Position	Name	Telephone	Fax	E-mail
Head of Department	Prof BM Alexander	021 460 3780	021 460 3576	Alexanderb@cput.ac.za
Secretary	Ms N Allie	021 460 3010	021 460 3576	allien@cput.ac.za

ACADEMIC STAFF (PERMANENT)

Name	Position	Qualifications
Prof BM Alexander	Head of Department	D Tech: Inform.Tech, MSc HRD Tech, BSc Elec. Eng.
Dr L Coleman	Senior Lecturer	Phd, MPhil (Adult Educat), MPhil, MRES, HDE, BA, AdDip (Adults)
Mr ER Francke	Senior Lecturer	Masters in Inform. Management. & Systems, B Tech: Bus. Admin, Dip in Educat. ND: Human Resource Management
Mr M F Gasant	Senior Lecturer	BSc, HED
Ms DD Lakay	Senior Lecturer	M Tech: Inform. Tech, HDHET, NHD: Comp. Data Proces., ND: Elect. Data Proces.
Dr T Iyamu	Senior Lecturer	PHD Information Systems (UCT)
Dr E Ruhode	Senior Lecturer	D Tech: Inform. Tech, MBA: Masters in Business Administration
Ms F Allie	Lecturer	M Tech: Inform. Tech, NHD: Comp. Data Proces, ND: Comp. Data Proces.
Mr J Barnes	Lecturer	M Tech: Inform. Tech, B Com (Hons)
Dr B Kabaso	Lecturer	D Tech: Inform Tech, MSc, B Eng
Ms G Khan	Lecturer	M Tech: Inform. Tech, NHD Comp. Data Proces, ND: Elect. Data Proces, NC: Com. Prog.
Mr W Koopman	Lecturer	B Tech: Elec. Eng, ND: Elec. Eng.
Mr T Makhurane	Lecturer	M Sc, B.Sc.(Hons)
Mr DJM Makola	Lecturer	M Tech: Inform. Tech, B.Sc. Comp. Science, B Tech: Inform. Tech, Snr Teach Dip.
Mr M Mandioma	Lecturer	MSc (Comp. Science), BSc (Hons), IT Proj. Mngt, HDET
Mr NE Masalov	Lecturer	MSc Elec, B.Sc. Elec. Eng.
Mr A Mukherjee	Lecturer	MEngIT

Name	Position	Qualifications
Mr K Naidoo	Lecturer	M Tech: Inform.Tech, BSc (Applied Maths & Comp Science)
Mr W M Ngindana	Lecturer	M Tech: Inform. Tech, B Tech: Inform. Tech, ND: Inform. Tech.
Mr W Olivier	Lecturer	B Tech: Inform. Tech, ND: Inform. Tech.
Mr WC Rothman	Lecturer	M Tech: Inform. Tech, BSc(Comp Science), TD, HTD, AE, NHD(DP)
Mr L Small	Lecturer	B Sc (Mathematics & Computer Science)
Ms KS Swart	Lecturer	B.Sc.(Comp Science)
Mr SJS Williams	Lecturer	M Tech: Elec. Eng, NHD: Elec. Eng, ND: Elec. Eng.
Ms S Tswane	Lecturer	M Tech: IT
Ms E Zietsman	Lecturer	B.Sc., B.Sc. (Hons) Comp. Science, MBL
Ms T Ncubukezi	Lecturer	M Tech: Inform Tech, B Tech: Inform.Tech, ND: Inform. Tech.
Ms J Freitas	Lecturer	MBA, PG Dip in Business
Ms N Mclean	Lecturer	M Arts in Media Studies, B Journ
Mr A Mwebaze	Lecturer	MSc IT, BSc IT
Mr RW Burger	Junior Lecturer	BCom
Ms P Inderlal	WIL Co-ordinator	B Tech: IT, ND: Inform. Tech

QUALIFICATIONS OFFERED

Undergrad/ Postgrad	Qualification Type	Qual Code	Qualification Name	Campus Offered	Minimum Duration (Years)	Work-Integrated Learning
Undergrad	Higher Certificate	HCINCT	Higher Certificate in Information & Communication Technology	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Undergrad	Diploma	DPICTA	Diploma in Information & Communication Technology: Applications Development	Cape Town	3 Years	n/a
Undergrad	Diploma	DPICTC	Diploma in Information & Communication Technology: Communication Networks	Cape Town	3 Years	n/a
Undergrad	Diploma	DPICTM	Diploma in Information & Communication Technology: Multimedia Applications	Cape Town	3 Years	n/a
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTINSD	B Tech: Information Technology (Software Development)	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTINTM	B Tech: Information Technology (Information Technology Management)	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTINCN	B Tech: Information Technology (Communication Networks)	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTECMM	B Tech: Multimedia Technology	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTINFR	M Tech: Information Technology	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTBISR	M Tech: Business Information Systems	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Post Graduate	D Tech Degree	DTINFR	D Tech: Information Technology	Cape Town	2 Years	n/a
Post Graduate	D Tech Degree	DTINMR	D Tech: Informatics	Cape Town	2 Years	n/a

HIGHER CERTIFICATE IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY

Course aim

The course prepares students for professional careers in Information Technology and specifically in the field of IT Service Management.

Career opportunities

There is an ongoing need for a wide range of highly skilled information technology personnel in South Africa. As the field is subject to rapid technological change, it requires professionals who are well trained in IT Service Management. A career path in this field ranges from an IT Service Desk Trainee to IT Service Manager.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:

Home Language 50%, First Additional Language 40% Mathematics 40% or Maths Literacy 60% *One of the languages must be English

These aforementioned compulsory subjects, plus 3 additional subjects (excluding Life Orientation) should amount to an academic point score of 30.0

Personal characteristics

The following personal characteristics will be an advantage:

- A combination of mathematical and creative ability;
- The ability to analyse problems logically;
- An interest in computers;
- The ability to adapt to changing circumstances;
- The ability to cope with pressure and deadlines;
- Perseverance;
- Detail orientated and problem-solving skills;
- Effective communicator and a strong team player.

Duration of course

Full-time: One year

Venue of offering

The course is offered in collaboration with the following TVET Colleges:

- Northlink College (Tygerberg Campus)
- False Bay College (Fish Hoek & Khayelitsha Campuses)
- College of Cape Town (Crawford Campus)

HIGHER CERTIFICATE IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY

QUALIFICATION CODE: HCINCT

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	SSP100S	Information Technology Services Practice 1	C		5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	SST100S	Information Technology Services Theory 1	C		5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	SPR100S	Information Technology Services Project 1	C		5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CPN100S	Computer Networks 1	C		5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CHW100S	Computer Hardware 1	C		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CSW100S	Computer Software 1	C		5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CAP100S	Computer Applications 1	C		5	5.04	0.042	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	SCM100S	Strategic Communication 1	C		5	5.04	0.042	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PCO100S	Personal Communication 1	C		5	5.04	0.042	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	QNT100S	Quantitative Techniques	C		5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	BSP100S	Business Practice 1	C		5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the Higher Certificate: 11

PROMOTION CRITERIA

A student will only be allowed to register for the Diploma in Information Communication Technology if he/she has passed the Higher Certificate: ICT with an average of 65%.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails any subject in TWO consecutive registrations of that subject or module.
- A student who has been excluded will not be allowed to register for any subject in the Department for ONE academic year.
- A student who wants to be re-admitted after exclusion must apply in writing to the Head of the Department. The student must show that issues relating to the exclusion have been addressed.
- A student registered for the Higher Certificate will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of THREE REGISTERED YEARS from the date of first registration.

APPEAL PROCEDURE

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for eg extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress. Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract.

DIPLOMA IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY: APPLICATIONS DEVELOPMENT

Course aim

The course prepares students for professional careers or advanced studies in Information Technology and promotes the discovery, dissemination and application of knowledge involving Information Technology (IT). This diploma deals with the design and production of software products and systems to meet specified needs and to ensure that their production and maintenance is cost effective.

Career opportunities

There is an ongoing need for a wide range of highly skilled information technology personnel in South Africa. As the field is subject to rapid technological change, it requires professionals who are well trained, who keep up to date with the latest developments and who can engage future trends and developments. Graduates are prepared for careers in computer programming, systems analysis and design and database administration.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 50%, First Additional Language 40% Mathematics 40% or Maths Literacy 60% *One of the languages must be English
These aforementioned compulsory subjects, plus 3 additional subjects (excluding Life Orientation) should amount to an academic point score of 36.0

Due to the vast number of applications that are received, meeting the minimum admission requirements cannot guarantee the applicant a place on the course. Applicants are ranked according to their grade 12 academic performance.

Personal characteristics

The following personal characteristics will be an advantage:

- A combination of mathematical and creative ability;
- The ability to analyse problems logically;
- An interest in computers;
- The ability to adapt to changing circumstances;
- The ability to cope with pressure and deadlines;
- Perseverance;
- Detail orientated and problem-solving skills;
- Effective communicator and a strong team player.

Duration of course

Full-time: Three years
Part-time: Four years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

DIPLOMA IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY: APPLICATIONS DEVELOPMENT

QUALIFICATION CODE: DPICTA

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1st YEAR - ALL SUBJECTS ARE COMPULSORY									
1	Year	ADF152S	Applications Development Foundations 1		5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	BPR152S	Business Practice 1		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CNF152S	Communications Networks Foundations 1		5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	ICF152S	ICT Fundamentals 1		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	MUF152S	Multimedia Foundations 1		5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRC152S	Professional Communications 1		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRG152S	Programming 1		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRT152S	Project 1		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2nd YEAR - ALL SUBJECTS ARE COMPULSORY									
2	Year	ADF262S	Applications Development Fundamentals 2	ICF152S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ADP262S	Applications Development Practice 2	ADF152S CNF152S MUF152S PRT152S	5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ADT262S	Applications Development Theory 2	ADF152S CNF152S MUF152S PRT152S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CNF262S	Communications Networks Fundamentals 2	ICF152S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ICE262S	ICT Electives 2		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	INM262S	Information Management 2		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ITS262S	Information Systems 2	ADF152S CNF152S MUF152S PRT152S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	MAF262S	Multimedia Applications Fundamentals 2	ICF152S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PRC262S	Professional Communications 2	PRC152S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PRT262S	Project 2	ADF152S CNF152S MUF152S PRT152S	5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
3rd YEAR - ALL SUBJECTS ARE COMPULSORY									
3	Year	ADP372S	Applications Development Practice 3	ADT262S, ADP262S, ITS262S, PRT262S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	ADT372S	Applications Development Theory 3	ADT262S, ADP262S, ITS262S, PRT262S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	ICE362S	ICT Electives 3	ICE262S	6	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	ITS362S	Information Systems 3	ADT262S, ADP262S, ITS262S, PRT262S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PFP362S	Professional Practice 3	PRC262S	6	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRT362S	Project 3	ADT262S, ADP262S, ITS262S, PRT262S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRM372S	Project Management 3	INM262S	6	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRP372S	Project Presentation 3	ADT262S, ADP262S, ITS262S, PRT262S	6	5	0.043	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 26

PROMOTION POLICY

- A student will only be allowed to register for Majors in a succeeding programme level, if s/he has passed all Majors of the preceding programme level.
- A student will only be allowed to register for Majors in a succeeding programme level if s/he has passed a minimum of all but one of the prescribed subjects (refer to the Prospectus) of the preceding programme level.
- A student will be allowed to register for a maximum of ten subjects and/or modules at any one time.
- A student will only be allowed to register for subjects and/or modules that present no timetable clashes.
- A student will not be allowed to register for any subject and/or module more than twice.

EXCLUSION POLICY

- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails his Majors in an academic year.
- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails three or more subjects and/or modules in an academic year.
- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails any subject in TWO consecutive registrations of that subject or module.
- A student who has been excluded will not be allowed to register for any subject in the Department for one academic year.
- A student who wants to be re-admitted after exclusion, must apply in writing to the Head of Department. The student must show that issues relating to the exclusion have been addressed.
- A student registered for the National Diploma will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of SIX REGISTERED YEARS, from the date of first registration.

APPEAL PROCEDURE

Students who are excluded may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODs. The student must show that issues relating to the exclusion have been addressed.

DIPLOMA IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY: COMMUNICATION NETWORKS

Course aim

The course prepares students for professional careers or advanced studies in Information Technology and promotes the discovery, dissemination and application of knowledge involving Information Technology (IT). This diploma deals with the design, development, implementation and management of networks by integrating knowledge of modern network topologies and protocols to create an appropriate environment for communication and information sharing.

Career opportunities

There is an ongoing need for a wide range of highly skilled information technology personnel in South Africa. As the field is subject to rapid technological change, it requires professionals who are well trained, who keep up to date with the latest developments and who can engage future trends and developments. Graduates are prepared for careers in network development and administration and systems administration.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:

Home Language 50%, First Additional Language 40% Mathematics 40% or Maths Literacy 60% *One of the languages must be English

These aforementioned compulsory subjects, plus 3 additional subjects (excluding Life Orientation) should amount to an academic point score of 36.0

Due to the vast number of applications that are received, meeting the minimum admission requirements cannot guarantee the applicant a place on the course. Applicants are ranked according to their grade 12 academic performance.

Personal characteristics

The following personal characteristics will be an advantage:

- A combination of mathematical and creative ability;
- The ability to analyse problems logically;
- An interest in computers;
- The ability to adapt to changing circumstances;
- The ability to cope with pressure and deadlines
- Perseverance;
- Detail orientated and problem-solving skills;
- Effective communicator and a strong team player.

Duration of course

Full-time: Three years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

DIPLOMA IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY: COMMUNICATION NETWORKS

QUALIFICATION CODE: DPICTC

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	ADF151S	Applications Development Foundations 1		5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	BPR151S	Business Practice 1		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CNF151S	Communications Networks Foundations 1		5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	ICF151S	ICT Fundamentals 1		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	MUF151S	Multimedia Foundations 1		5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRC151S	Professional Communications 1		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRG151S	Programming 1		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRT151S	Project 1		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ADF261S	Applications Development Fundamentals 2	ICF151S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CND261S	Communications Networks Des. 2	ADF151S CNF151S MUF151S PRT151S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CNF261S	Communications Networks Fundamentals 2	ICF151S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CNP261S	Communications Networks Pract. 2	ADF151S CNF151S MUF151S PRT151S	5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CMT261S	Communications Networks Theory 2	ADF151S CNF151S MUF151S PRT151S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ICE261S	ICT Electives 2		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	INM261S	Information Management 2		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
2	Year	MAF261S	Multimedia Applications Fundamentals 2	ICF151S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PRC261S	Professional Communications 2	PRC151S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PRT261S	Project 2	ADF151S CNF151S MUF151S PRT151S	5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	CND371S	Communications Networks Design 3	CMT261S, CNP261S, CND261S, PRT261S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	CNP371S	Communication Networks Practice 3	CMT261S, CNP261S, CND261S, PRT261S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	CMT371S	Communications Networks Theory 3	CMT261S, CNP261S, CND261S, PRT261S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	ICE361S	ICT Electives 3	ICE261S	6	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PFP361S	Professional Practice 3	PRC261S	6	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRT361S	Project 3	CMT261S, CNP261S, CND261S, PRT261S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRM371S	Project Management 3	INM261S	6	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRP371S	Project Presentation 3	CMT261S, CNP261S, CND261S, PRT261S	6	5	0.043	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 26

PROMOTION POLICY

- A student will only be allowed to register for Majors in a succeeding programme level, if s/he has passed all Majors of the preceding programme level.
- A student will only be allowed to register for Majors in a succeeding programme level if s/he has passed a minimum of all but one of the prescribed subjects (refer to the Prospectus) of the preceding programme level.
- A student will be allowed to register for a maximum of ten subjects and/or modules at any one time.
- A student will only be allowed to register for subjects and/or modules that present no timetable clashes.
- A student will not be allowed to register for any subject and/or module more than twice.

EXCLUSION POLICY

- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails his Majors in an academic year.
- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails three or more subjects and/or modules in an academic year.
- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails any subject in TWO consecutive registrations of that subject or module.
- A student who has been excluded will not be allowed to register for any subject in the Department for one academic year.
- A student who wants to be re-admitted after exclusion, must apply in writing to the Head of Department. The student must show that issues relating to the exclusion have been addressed.
- A student registered for the National Diploma will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of SIX REGISTERED YEARS, from the date of first registration.

APPEAL PROCESS

Students who are excluded may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODs. The student must show that issues relating to the exclusion have been addressed.

DIPLOMA IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY: MULTIMEDIA APPLICATIONS

Course aim

The course prepares students for professional careers or advanced studies in Information Technology and promotes the discovery, dissemination and application of knowledge involving Information Technology (IT). This qualification is intended to develop the necessary professional practices for those wanting to become multimedia technologists.

Career opportunities

There is an ongoing need for a wide range of highly skilled information technology personnel in South Africa. As the field is subject to rapid technological change, it requires professionals who are well trained, who keep up to date with the latest developments and who can engage future trends and developments. The multimedia technology specialisation is a career-focused ICT specialisation that enables people achieving the qualification to, with some supervision, and as part of a general team, and individually, engage in a process where a static, dynamic and interactive multimedia presentation (either web-based, dedicated console application, media specific such as CDROM or DVD or portable technology, audio or video) will be conceptualised, designed, planned, developed and published or produced.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 50%, First Additional Language 40% Mathematics 40% or Maths Literacy 60% *One of the languages must be English
These aforementioned compulsory subjects, plus 3 additional subjects (excluding Life Orientation) should amount to an academic point score of 36.0

Personal characteristics

The following personal characteristics will be an advantage:

- A combination of mathematical and creative ability;
- The ability to analyse problems logically;
- An interest in computers;
- The ability to adapt to changing circumstances;
- The ability to cope with pressure and deadlines;
- Perseverance;
- Detail orientated and problem-solving skills;
- Effective communicator and a strong team player.

Duration of course

Full-time: Three years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

DIPLOMA IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY: MULTIMEDIA APPLICATIONS

QUALIFICATION CODE: DPICTM

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1st YEAR - ALL SUBJECTS ARE COMPULSORY									
1	Year	ADF150S	Applications Development Foundations 1		5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	BPR150S	Business Practice 1		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CNF150S	Communications Networks Foundations 1		5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	ICF150S	ICT Fundamentals 1		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	MUF150S	Multimedia Foundations 1		5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRC150S	Professional Communications 1		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRG150S	Programming 1		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRT150S	Project 1		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2nd YEAR - ALL SUBJECTS ARE COMPULSORY									
2	Year	ADF260S	Applications Development Fundamentals 2	ICF150S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	CNF260S	Communications Networks Fundamentals 2	ICF150S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ICE260S	ICT Electives 2		5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	INM260S	Information Management 2		5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	MAF260S	Multimedia Applications Fundamentals 2	ICF150S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	MUD260S	Multimedia Design 2	ADF150S CNF150S MUF150S PRT150S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	MUP260S	Multimedia Practice 2	ADF150S CNF150S MUF150S PRT150S	5	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	MUT260S	Multimedia Technology 2	ADF150S CNF150S MUF150S PRT150S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PRC260S	Professional Communications 2	PRC150S	5	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PRT260S	Project 2	ADF150S CNF150S MUF150S PRT150S	5	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
3rd YEAR - ALL SUBJECTS ARE COMPULSORY									
3	Year	ICE360S	ICT Electives 3	ICE260S	6	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	MUD360S	Multimedia Design 3	MUT260S, MUP260S, MUD260S, PRT260S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	MUP370S	Multimedia Practice 3	MUT260S, MUP260S, MUD260S, PRT260S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	MUT370S	Multimedia Technology 3	MUT260S, MUP260S, MUD260S, PRT260S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PFP360S	Professional Practice 3	PRC260S	6	10	0.083	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRT360S	Project 3	MUT260S, MUP260S, MUD260S, PRT260S	6	20	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRM370S	Project Management 3	INM260S	6	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRP370S	Project Presentation 3	MUT260S, MUP260S, MUD260S, PRT260S	6	5	0.042	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 26

PROMOTION POLICY

- A student will only be allowed to register for Majors in a succeeding programme level, if s/he has passed all Majors of the preceding programme level.
- A student will only be allowed to register for Majors in a succeeding programme level if s/he has passed a minimum of all but one of the prescribed subjects (refer to the Prospectus) of the preceding programme level.
- A student will be allowed to register for a maximum of ten subjects and/or modules at any one time.
- A student will only be allowed to register for subjects and/or modules that present no timetable clashes.
- A student will not be allowed to register for any subject and/or module more than twice.

EXCLUSION POLICY

- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails his Majors in an academic year.
- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails three or more subjects and/or modules in an academic year.
- A student will be excluded from the Department if s/he fails any subject in TWO consecutive registrations of that subject or module.
- A student who has been excluded will not be allowed to register for any subject in the Department for one academic year.
- A student who wants to be re-admitted after exclusion, must apply in writing to the Head of Department. The student must show that issues relating to the exclusion have been addressed.
- A student registered for the National Diploma will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of SIX REGISTERED YEARS, from the date of first registration.

APPEAL PROCESS

Students who are excluded may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODs. The student must show that issues relating to the exclusion have been addressed.

B TECH: MULTIMEDIA

This is a short-term offer before the B Tech degree is replaced by the Advanced Diploma in 2018.

Course aim

The course has been specifically designed to cater for the diverse multimedia industry experiences so that a student will not be disadvantaged if he/she has been working in one specific area of the multimedia field.

Career opportunities

The widespread use of computers has resulted in an ongoing need for a wide range of highly skilled multimedia technology personnel. As the field is subject to rapid technological change, it requires professionals who are well trained, who keep up to date with the latest developments and who can engage future trends and developments in the field.

Multimedia Technology students are prepared for careers in electronic media design, video and sound, web design, web development, CD-ROM development and interactive media.

Curriculum

There are three subjects:

1. Multimedia Design 4
2. Research Methods & Techniques 4
3. Multimedia Technology 4

The first year will consist of Multimedia Design 4 and Research Methods & Techniques 4, and the second year will consist of the Multimedia Technology 4 subject which incorporates the Project .

Admission requirements

A National Diploma in Multimedia Technology with an average of 60% in the final year of the National Diploma, or with two years appropriate industry-related experience, which is in line with the admission requirements for the B Tech: Information Technology.

Duration of course

Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

B TECH: MULTIMEDIA TECHNOLOGY

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTECMM

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
COMPULSORY SUBJECTS										
4	Year	MMAT040	Multimedia Technology 4	C		7	54	0.450	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	MMSD040	Multimedia Design 4	C		7	54	0.450	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	MMRM010	Research Methods & Techniques	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subject to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 3

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: MULTIMEDIA TECHNOLOGY

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

MULTIMEDIA DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Multimedia Design 4 will engage with the theoretical elements of the relationship between media and society, and be able to provide real-world examples and applications of this theory. Some of the key subject areas to be covered will be: Media and Society; Human-Digital Interaction; Digital Culture; Digital Concept Development; Media Representation and Data.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

RESEARCH METHODS & TECHNIQUES

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject will provide students with an introduction to quantitative and qualitative research methods. Topics to be addressed include the research phenomenon, research design, needs analysis, literature survey, data collection and research ethics. This subject prepares a student for higher level research-directed studies.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MULTIMEDIA TECHNOLOGY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Multimedia Technology 4 will apply core Multimedia concepts to real-world scenarios and guide students through the conceptualisation, development, management and execution of their own Multimedia project incorporating project management tools.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

B TECH: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY - SPECIALISATION OPTIONS:

- **SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT**
- **COMMUNICATION NETWORKS**
- **INFORMATION AND TECHNOLOGY MANAGEMENT**

The B Tech IT degree is a fourth year career-focused ICT qualification offered by the Department of Information Technology.

Course aim

The course is designed to enable a learner to, not only apply the concepts and skills of the specialization sufficiently for a smooth transition into the work place, but also to operate on a higher level in order to solve complex problems adapting to the requirements of the organization's environment.

A B Tech IT graduate is expected to acquire and develop sufficient knowledge to solve complex problems in an ethical and professional manner by obtaining, processing, evaluating, managing and communicating related information using a range of suitable methods within the area of study as indicated by the different specialization purpose statements.

Further, the ability to interpret and discuss new knowledge, the critical evaluation of facts, the practical application thereof and the solution of problem situations in practice are the expected outcomes. In addition to acquiring more advanced skills, the emphasis is also placed on developing a person who is skilful with a good understanding of his/her role in society. Therefore, the three core components of knowing, doing and being are developed for meaningful engagement in the IT discipline and practice on the appropriate level.

SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT

Designing and producing software products and systems to meet specified needs so that they work reliably and their production and maintenance is cost effective.

COMMUNICATION NETWORKS

This specialisation option deals with the design, development, implementation and management of networks by integrating knowledge of modern network topologies and protocols to create an appropriate and adequate environment of communication and information sharing.

INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY MANAGEMENT

Manage people and technology for creating, modifying and sustaining organisational information systems.

Career opportunities for the various specialisation options

The widespread use of computers has resulted in an on-going need for a wide range of highly skilled information technology personnel. As the field is subject to rapid technological change, it requires professionals who are well trained, who keep up to date with the latest developments and who can engage future trends and developments in the field.

- **SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT**
  Software Development graduates are prepared for careers in computer programming, systems analysis and design and database administration.

- **COMMUNICATION NETWORKS**
  Communication Networks graduates are prepared for careers in network development and administration and systems administration.

- **INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY MANAGEMENT**
  Information & Technology Management graduates can be appointed as a Manager responsible for creating, modifying and sustaining organisational information systems.

Admission requirements

B TECH: SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT
- Diploma in Information & Communication Technology: Applications Development

B TECH: COMMUNICATION NETWORKS
- Diploma in Information & Communication Technology: Communication Networks

B TECH: INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY MANAGEMENT
- Diploma in Information & Communication Technology: Applications Development

Duration of course

Full-time: One year
Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus

B TECH: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY: SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTINSD

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
COMPULSORY SUBJECTS										
4	Year	PRW 400S	Project 4	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PNT 400S	Project Management 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	NMT 103S	Research Methodology 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	DOS 400S	Development Software 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	ADS 400S	Advanced Development Software 4	C	DOS400S	7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	BUF400S	Business Fundamentals 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
ELECTIVE SUBJECTS (STUDENTS MUST SELECT THREE OF THE FOLLOWING ELECTIVES)										
4	Sem	SWD 400S	Software Engineering & Design 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	CPZ 400S	Computer Security 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	DBS 400S	Database Systems 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	HIF400S	Health Informatics Fundamentals 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

NOTE: Students must pass “Development Software 4” before they can continue with “Advanced Development Software 4”.

The B Tech degree is awarded when a student has obtained 10 credits where each subject equals 1 credit except Project 4 that equals 2 credits.

B TECH: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY: INFORMATION AND TECHNOLOGY MANAGEMENT

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTINTM

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
COMPULSORY SUBJECTS										
4	Year	PRW 400S	Project 4	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PNT 400S	Project Management 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	NMT 103S	Research Methodology	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	ITN 400S	Information & Technology Management 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	ATM 400S	Advanced Information & Technology Management 4	C	ITN400S	7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	SIY 400S	Strategic Information Systems 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	BUF 400S	Business Fundamentals 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
ELECTIVE SUBJECTS (STUDENTS MUST SELECT TWO OF THE FOLLOWING ELECTIVES)										
4	Sem	CPZ 400S	Computer Security 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	DBA 400S	Data Administration 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	HIF400S	Health Informatics Fundamentals 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

NOTE: Students must pass “Information & Technology Management 4” before they can continue with “Advanced Information & Technology Management 4”.

The B Tech degree is awarded when a student has obtained 10 credits where each subject equals 1 credit except Project 4 that equals 2 credits.

B TECH: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY: COMMUNICATION NETWORKS

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTINCN

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
COMPULSORY SUBJECTS										
4	Year	PRW 400S	Project 4	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PNT 400S	Project Management 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	NMT 103S	Research Methodology	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	CNW 400S	Communication Networks 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	ACN 400S	Advanced Communication Networks 4	C	CNW400S	7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	NWK400S	Networks 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	BUF400S	Business Fundamentals 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
ELECTIVE SUBJECTS (STUDENTS MUST SELECT TWO OF THE FOLLOWING ELECTIVES)										
4	Sem	SWD 400S	Software Engineering & Design 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	CPZ 400S	Computer Security 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	HIF400S	Health Informatics Fundamentals 4	E		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

NOTE: Students must pass “Communication Networks 4” before they can continue with “Advanced Communication Networks 4”.

The B Tech degree is awarded when a student has obtained 10 credits where each subject equals 1 credit except Project 4 that equals 2 credits.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

M TECH: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Course aim
Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in Information Technology and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge.

Course structure
This programme consists of a comprehensive full research project culminating in a thesis. For the duration of the course, the student is placed under the guidance of an approved supervisor(s) who will assist and guide the candidate throughout his / her studies.

In their thesis, Master's candidates must prove that they understand a particular problem in the industry in which they have done their research, are able to analyse and set it out logically, are able to arrive at logical conclusions or a diagnosis of the problem and are then able to make proposals for the improvement / elimination of the problem. The research problem, its justification, process and outcome are reported in a thesis. The thesis must comply with the normal general technical requirements and rules with regard to scope, quality and layout.

Career opportunities
Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements
A B Tech: Information Technology or an equivalent four-year qualification in an appropriate discipline.

English proficiency
In addition to the criteria for admission, international students from countries where English is not the official language must demonstrate proof of English proficiency.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee
The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of course
A minimum of one calendar year full-time or two consecutive calendar years part-time.

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

M TECH: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTINFR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
5	Year	R5IT01R	Thesis	C		8	120	1.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

INTERRUPTION OF STUDIES

Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate. The interruption of studies form (HDC 1.9) is available on the Centre for Postgraduate Studies website. Interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

M TECH: BUSINESS INFORMATION SYSTEMS

Course aim
Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in Information Technology and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge.

Course structure
This programme consists of a comprehensive full research project culminating in a thesis. For the duration of the course, the student is placed under the guidance of an approved supervisor(s) who will assist and guide the candidate throughout his / her studies.

In their thesis, Master's candidates must prove that they understand a particular problem in the industry in which they have done their research, are able to analyse and set it out logically, are able to arrive at logical conclusions or a diagnosis of the problem and are then able to make proposals for the improvement / elimination of the problem. The research problem, its justification, process and outcome are reported in a thesis. The thesis must comply with the normal general technical requirements and rules with regard to scope, quality and layout.

Career opportunities
Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements
A B Tech: Information Technology or an equivalent four-year qualification in an appropriate discipline.

English proficiency
In addition to the criteria for admission, international students from countries where English is not the official language must demonstrate proof of English proficiency.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee
The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of course
A minimum of one calendar year full-time or two consecutive calendar years part-time.

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

M TECH: BUSINESS INFORMATION SYSTEMS

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTBISR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
5	Year	R5BI01R	Thesis	C		8	120	1.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

INTERRUPTION OF STUDIES

Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate. The interruption of studies form (HDC 1.9) is available on the Centre for Postgraduate Studies website. Interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

D TECH: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Course aim
The purpose of this programme is to develop the competence to conduct independent research under minimal guidance in the field of Information Technology.

Course structure
This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor/s that will assist with both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course. It comprises an advanced research project culminating in a dissertation.

In dissertations, students must provide proof of original and creative thinking and problem-solving and must make a real contribution to the solving of a particular problem in the industry to which their research applies. The dissertations must comply with the normal technical requirements and rules with regard to scope, quality and layout.

Career opportunities
Graduates of this programme follow a career in research and development in industry or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions at Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements
An M Tech: Information Technology or an equivalent master's qualification in an appropriate discipline.

English proficiency
In addition to the criteria for admission, international students from countries where English is not the official language must demonstrate proof of English proficiency.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee
The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies..

Duration of course
A minimum of two consecutive calendar years.

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

D TECH: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

QUALIFICATION CODE: DTINFR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
6	Year	R6IT01R	Thesis	C		8	240	2.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the D Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

INTERRUPTION OF STUDIES

Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate. The interruption of studies form (HDC 1.9) is available on the Centre for Postgraduate Studies website. Interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

D TECH: INFORMATICS

Course aim
The purpose of this programme is to develop the competence to conduct independent research under minimal guidance in the field of Information Technology.

Course structure
This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor/s who will assist with both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course. It comprises an advanced research project culminating in a dissertation.

In dissertations, students must provide proof of original and creative thinking and problem-solving and must make a real contribution to the solving of a particular problem in the industry to which their research applies. The dissertations must comply with the normal technical requirements and rules with regard to scope, quality and layout.

Career opportunities
Graduates of this programme follow a career in research and development in industry or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions at Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements
An M Tech: Information Technology or an equivalent master's qualification in an appropriate discipline.

English proficiency
In addition to the criteria for admission, international students from countries where English is not the official language must demonstrate proof of English proficiency.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee
The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of course
A minimum of two consecutive calendar years.

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus

D TECH: INFORMATICS

QUALIFICATION CODE: DTINMR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre or Co- requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
6	Year	R6IN01R	Thesis	C		8	240	2.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the D Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

INTERRUPTION OF STUDIES

Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate. The interruption of studies form (HDC 1.9) is available on the Centre for Postgraduate Studies website. Interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE HIGHER CERTIFICATE IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

BUSINESS PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Introduction to Business and Economics, Ethics and Social Responsibility, Business in a Global Economy, Choosing a Form of Business Ownership, Small Business, Entrepreneurship and Franchises, Understanding Information and E-Business, Using Accounting Information, Mastering Financial Management, Entrepreneurship and Innovation, The Entrepreneur & managing creativity, Building Capabilities for MTI Success.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMPUTER APPLICATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Exposure to the functioning of a set of "standard" computer applications. The development of computer applications by demonstrating the mechanics of these applications. A pragmatic "black box" approach to expose the "workings" of programming code. The development of logic diagrams to explain the functioning of computer applications. Explain the principles of functional design logic of computer software applications. Explain the functional design logic of a suite of "standard" computer software routines and/or applications.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMPUTER HARDWARE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Computer hardware looks at the computer parts and tools, Introduction to Virtual PC Assembling, Working inside the computer, All about motherboards, Supporting Processors, Upgrading memory, Supporting hard drives, Supporting I/O and storage devices, Installing Windows Operating Systems, Maintaining Windows, Optimizing Windows, Supporting Printers, & Security Strategies

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMPUTER NETWORKS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Networking components and types of networks.
Networking medium and topologies, Describe different network topologies, Describe the difference between the logical and physical topologies, Explain the purpose and properties of APIPA and DHCP, Compare and contrast different wireless Technologies, Describe different types of networking devices, Compare the layers of the OSI and TCP/IP Models, Classify how application, devices and protocols relate to the OSI model layers. Explain the purpose and properties of IP addressing, Identify common TCP and UDP default ports, Explain the function of the common networking protocols, Use of Packet tracer to design the network, Planning the addressing structure, IP addressing, Introduction to networking with windows, Connecting to and setting up a network.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMPUTER SOFTWARE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This is not a typical structured software development offering, but is intended to provide students with practical “hands-on” exposure to the “workings” of computer programmes. How to systematically “deconstruct” a suite of example software programmes and then modify them. The “workings” of selected Excel VBA routines, JAVA desktop and web code, and Mobile applications. The programme design logic at a basic functional level. Introduction to the concepts of software architecture, and object orientation and sequential programming approaches. How to open these applications and make minor modifications to the code to affect various outcomes.
How to re-structure the software as required.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SERVICES PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: User Support Management and Product Evaluation. Needs Analysis and Assessment. Installing and Managing the Computers. Training Computer Users. End User Documentation

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SERVICES PROJECT 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Service Desk. IT Services Project. Activities Logbook. Project outputs and outcomes, Project Presentation and a two week Internship.

Project 1 is focused towards constructing a portfolio of evidence (paper-based or electronic), which will not only reflect work done at this level but also serve as a device for recording professional exposure. It is incumbent on the student to engage and shape the project towards achieving the required exposure and implementation to achieve the desired outcomes.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SERVICES THEORY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Introduction to Computer User Support. Customer Service Skills, Troubleshooting Skills for Computer Problems. Common Support Problems. Defining a Help Desk (Incident management).

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PERSONAL COMMUNICATION 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Communication Theory. Communicating Non-verbally. Barriers to Communication. Self-image and awareness. Intercultural communication. Communicating in Groups. Problem-solving in Groups.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

QUANTITATIVE TECHNIQUES

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Basic Computer Mathematics. Functions and Equations. Trigonometry and Geometry. Quantitative Techniques.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

STRATEGIC COMMUNICATION 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Business Procedures. Team Dynamics. Oral Reports and Presentations. Mass Media. Social Media and Media Literacy.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE DIPLOMA IN INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY IN APPLICATIONS DEVELOPMENT, COMMUNICATION NETWORKS & MULTIMEDIA APPLICATIONS

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

APPLICATIONS DEVELOPMENT FOUNDATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The basic building blocks for a novice software developer are developed. This content includes exposure to software application tools and software design techniques and methodologies utilizing modern computer and network equipment.

On completion, the student will be able to develop basic software applications, which include using the appropriate programming concepts, and design tools, including file manipulation, arrays, databases, and OO methodologies; and provide support services.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLICATIONS DEVELOPMENT FUNDAMENTALS 2

Pre-requisites: ICT Fundamentals 1

Course outline: This will cover courses over the three qualifications namely Application Development, Communication Networks and Multimedia applications.

This offering is intended to provide students with an appreciation for the fundamental building blocks applied in the creation and maintenance of software artefacts (i.e. business application software).

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLICATIONS DEVELOPMENT PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisites: Applications Development Foundations 1, Project 1, Communications Networks Foundations 1 & Multimedia Foundations 1

Course outline: In this module, the practical implementation of theoretical concepts are pursued. The course is largely practical-based and consists of computer lab work. The software tools are the industry-standard C and C++ in a Windows and Linux environment.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLICATIONS DEVELOPMENT PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Applications Development Theory & Practice 2, Information Systems 2 & Project 2

Course outline: In this module the practical implementation of theoretical concepts are pursued. The course is largely practical-based and consists of computer lab work. The software tools are the industry-standard Java and C++, Oracle tools in a Windows and Linux environment.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLICATIONS DEVELOPMENT THEORY 2

Pre-requisites: Applications Development Foundations 1 & Project 1

Course outline: The aim of the subject is to fulfil the purpose of teaching students to be able to design, implement and maintain software products and systems to meet specified needs so that they function reliably and their production and maintenance is cost effective. On completion of this unit, the student will be able to develop more complex applications which can include different frameworks, using different methods and also on different platforms; maintain, document, integrate and enhance existing software systems; communicate effectively in a team; effectively test and debug programs; and apply effective security measures.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLICATIONS DEVELOPMENT THEORY 3

Pre-requisites: Applications Development Theory & Practice 2, Information Systems 2 & Project 2

Course outline: This is the terminal offering in the Applications Development domain. On completion of this unit the student will be able to – develop software artefacts for different environments which shall include databases, the internet, mobile applications;

use appropriate analysis and design tools; produce effective, economical and maintainable software solutions and manage and participate as a team member in software projects.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

BUSINESS PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This offering is intended to provide students with exposure to the basic principles of business practice. This course forms part of a Higher Certificate in ICT programme focussing on IT Services; and it is also an elective course within the Diploma in ICT programme that currently supports specialisations in Applications Development, Communication Networks and Multimedia Applications. Topics covered are - Information Technology Support Services; Economics, Politics and Social Philosophies; Business Practice; and Business Accounting Practice.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATIONS NETWORKS DESIGN 2

Pre-requisites: Communication Networks Foundations 1 & Project 1

Course outline: In this subject, students are introduced to the design process which they will use to design a medium-sized network. They will use various design software packages to draw physical and logical network diagrams of their solution.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATIONS NETWORKS DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: Communications Networks Theory 2, Practice 2 & Design 2 & Project 2

Course outline: This subject enables the student to develop the skills to design a solution based on effectively analysing the needs of the user, determining the best solution and reflecting on the design process.

Assessment: All assessment are compulsory

COMMUNICATIONS NETWORKS FOUNDATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: In this subject, students are introduced to the networking world, its terminology, protocols, standards and standards bodies, network topologies and architectures.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATIONS NETWORKS FUNDAMENTALS 2

Pre-requisites: ICT Fundamentals 1

Course outline: This will cover courses over the three qualifications namely Applications Development, Communication Networks and Multimedia Applications.

In this subject, students are introduced to the internet, its development, its uses and its social impact. Students will be expected to show competence in effectively using the internet to enhance their learning experience and the pitfalls when using the internet to gather information.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATIONS NETWORKS PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisites: Communications Networks Foundations 1 & Project 1

Course outline: In this subject, students learn to configure routers for DHCP, NAT/PAT, static and dynamic routes and STP on switches. The CCNA modules on routing and switching will be used. Competencies in this subject will be assessed through hands-on skills assessment in the networking laboratory.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATIONS NETWORKS PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Communications Networks Theory 2, Practice 2 & Design 2 & Project 2

Course outline: The student will implement and deploy a secure network in a lab environment ensuring that networking standards are maintained. This process will lead the student through the design phase to the testing and implementation phase. Students will be expected to

display competency in installing software and configuring devices with capabilities to enhance the experience of the user.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATIONS NETWORKS THEORY 2

Pre-requisites: Communications Networks Foundations 1 & Project 1

Course outline: In this subject students are exposed to IPv4 addressing, routers and routing. The development of the switched network is also covered.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATIONS NETWORKS THEORY 3

Pre-requisites: Communications Networks Theory 2, Practice 2 & Design 2 & Project 2

Course outline: The emphasis is for the student to develop an appreciation of modern technologies and the requirements to integrate these technologies into existing and new communication networks. Students must know the effect these technologies will have on the overall performance of the network.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ICT FUNDAMENTALS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This consists of two sections viz Computer Networks 1 and Computer Hardware 1.

Computer Networks 1
This subject introduces students to computer networking, its terminology, components, protocols, standard and standard bodies. The Network Fundamentals module of the Cisco Academy programme will be used for the theory and practical component of this course.

Computer Hardware 1
This subject introduces the student to the computer, types of computer devices, its components and its connection to the network and internet. Students will work in groups to build and maintain computer related equipment and install patches and software. IT Essentials 1 of the Cisco Academy programme will be used for the theoretical and practical component of this subject.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ICT ELECTIVES 2

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: These offerings are intended to provide students with an opportunity for enriched exposure to a diverse and open-ended range of ICT-related and other topics. Topics will address topical issues relating to "cutting edge" ICT technologies but will also feature topics of general interest and of a trans-disciplinary nature.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ICT ELECTIVES 3

Pre-requisites: ICT Electives 2

Course outline: These offerings are intended to provide students with an opportunity for enriched exposure to a diverse and open-ended range of ICT-related and other topics. Topics will address topical issues relating to "cutting edge" ICT technologies but will also feature topics of general interest and of a trans-disciplinary nature. The two offerings are both at an NQF level 6, but some topics may be more suited to second year students while others might be more suited to final year students.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INFORMATION MANAGEMENT 2

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This offering is designed to expose multi-disciplinary students to the tools, techniques and processes that enable the collection and management of information from one or more sources and the distribution of that information to one or more audiences. The coverage includes a study from the perspective of those who have a stake in, or a right to that information. Management means the organization of, and control over the structure, processing and delivery of information.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INFORMATION SYSTEMS 2

Pre-requisites: Applications Development Foundations 1 & Project 1

Course outline: This module covers the systems development lifecycle and deals with the work of a Systems Analyst/Designer, Systems Architect or Database Administrator. The different development approaches are covered as well as database design using the Oracle

relational database. Through partnerships with Oracle Corporation, IBM, Microsoft and other major software manufacturers, we are able to provide a modern, well-equipped environment for the study of software production.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INFORMATION SYSTEMS 3

Pre-requisites: Applications Development Theory & Practice 2, Information Systems 2 & Project 2

Course outline: This subject covers the implementation and management of software development effort. The introductory level work would have been mastered at level 2. The terminal level thus focuses on system integration, modelling and the advanced aspects of managing the software lifecycle.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MULTIMEDIA FOUNDATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Multimedia Foundations 1 deals with the fundamentals and history of multimedia. By using the web page as a platform, the constituent elements of the platform as well as integrating media that can be produced, sourced and edited is discussed with respect to performance and size considerations. Media elements are either acquired or produced within the subject. Layout and design aspects are introduced. These topics meld together to produce the website that ultimately demonstrates synthesis of the topics.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MULTIMEDIA APPLICATIONS FUNDAMENTALS 2

Pre-requisites: ICT Fundamentals 1

Course outline:This will cover courses over the three qualifications namely Applications Development, Communications Networks and Multimedia applications.

This offering provides students with a critical and reflective exploration of the evolution of, and relationship between media and technology, and how each has influenced the other.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MULTIMEDIA DESIGN 2

Pre-requisites: Multimedia Foundations 1 & Project 1

Course outline: Communication is the underlying purpose behind multimedia applications and systems. The subject intends to introduce learners to, and develop their skills in, the communication and design aspects of the multimedia industry. Fundamental skills are developed that equips learners with an understanding of what is involved in communication through, and design for, various media platforms. Learners employ this understanding to design media presentations while applying underlying, learned principles. Aspects relating to design, techniques, aesthetics, purpose, usability and application are covered in this subject.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MULTIMEDIA DESIGN 3

Pre-requisites: Multimedia Technology 2, Practice 2 & Design 2 & Project 2

Course outline: Multimedia Design 3 advances the understanding and concepts of Multimedia Design 2. by observing, analysing and reflecting on, and subsequently implementing new approaches to design- an implementation within the multimedia environment. The learner is expected to explore design against audience needs, consider the purpose of the treatment and arrive at a unique communication strategy after critical evaluation of varied approaches. Learners will explore personal self-reflection, leverage previous understandings of and abilities in multimedia design, and adapt where necessary to new situations, such as the design of unique multimedia artefacts.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MULTIMEDIA PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisites: Multimedia Foundations 1 & Project 1

Course outline: In order to communicate effectively in an electronic and visual medium, learners are required to be competent in employing various tools to develop the message from concept to presentation. This subject aims to expose learners to typical industry-related tools so that they may achieve intermediate competence in the employment of these while producing real media artefacts and presentations.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MULTIMEDIA PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Multimedia Technology 2, Practice 2 & Design 2 & Project 2

Course outline: In order to communicate effectively through an electronic and visual medium, learners are required to be competent in employing various tools to develop the message from concept to presentation. This subject aims to expose learners to typical, industry-related tools so that they may achieve intermediate competence in the employment of these, while producing real media artefacts and presentations.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MULTIMEDIA TECHNOLOGY 2

Pre-requisites: Multimedia Foundations 1 & Project 1

Course outline: Multimedia Technology 2 aims to provide learners with the necessary skills to be able to design standardized interactive websites using scripting and database techniques. Emphasis will be placed on a learners' ability to interpret technologies to produce multimedia elements.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MULTIMEDIA TECHNOLOGY 3

Pre-requisites: Multimedia Technology 2, Practice 2 & Design 2 & Project 2

Course outline: Multimedia Technology 3 aims to provide learners with the necessary skills to be able to design an interactive website using advanced server-side scripting and database development techniques. Emphasis will be placed on a learner's ability to inter-connect and integrate different technologies and web frameworks as well as to apply industry best practices for a web-enabled enterprise level application.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL COMMUNICATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This offering is designed to equip students with critical academic and professional skills intended to enhance their performance in the academic and workplace environments. It aims to achieve this by focusing on three learning areas, namely Personal Communication, Strategic Communication and Academic Literacies. The area of Academic

Literacies covers information literacy, basic research skills, critical thinking and problem-solving skills, academic writing and report writing skills.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL COMMUNICATIONS 2

Pre-requisites: Professional Communications 1

Course outline: This offering is intended to provide students with a wide range of personal and professional skills, which can enhance their success in an ICT diploma programme and/or in the workplace. The course covers the following themes: self-awareness, worldview, self-actualisation and globalisation. It also covers technology in corporate communication, team management and media and ICT in Africa as well as business and technical communication skills. In addition to the aforementioned themes, the course also focuses on intensive reading and critical analysis of texts, research methods, application and academic writing skills.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Professional Communications 2

Course outline: This subject is designed to provide students with a wide range of professional business acumen and other related concepts that allow for a smooth transition into the world of work. The subject focuses on professional practice, entrepreneurial skills and academic research respectively. Professional practice and entrepreneurial skills are important in assisting students to effectively cope in the ICT industry. It can also serve as a means to minimise students' risk of failure when placed in industry. Academic literacies and research in particular provides a foundation for students who want to further their studies (postgraduate).

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROGRAMMING 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This consists of two topics areas viz Computer Software 1 and Computer Applications 1.

Computer Software 1
This is not a typical, structured software development offering, but is intended to provide students with practical "hands-on" exposure to the "workings" of computer programmes.

The course will demonstrate the "workings" of selected Excel VBA routines, JAVA desktop and web code, and Mobile applications. Students will be exposed to the programme design logic at a basic, functional level. Students will be introduced to the concepts of software architecture, and object orientation and sequential programming approaches.

Computer Applications 1
This offering is intended to provide students with exposure to the functioning of a set of "standard" computer applications. The intention is to create excitement about the development of computer applications by demonstrating the mechanics of these applications. A pragmatic "black box" approach will be used to expose the "workings" of programming code. The development of logic diagrams to explain the functioning of computer applications will be promoted in this course.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROJECT 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This offering is intended to provide students with an opportunity to integrate learning across the first year curriculum and deliver an integrated project that reflects the appropriate academic standard for the level.

Project 1 is focussed towards constructing portfolio evidence (paper-based or electronic), which will not only reflect work done at this level but also serve as a device for recording professional exposure. Students will be exposed to Microsoft Project as a tool for generating the Project Management Plan. Topics covered are - Portfolio Evidence; Academic Projects; Activities Logbook; Project Outputs and Outcomes; and Project Presentation.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROJECT 2

Pre-requisites: Project 1 & Applications Development Foundations 1

Course outline: This offering is intended to provide students with an opportunity to integrate learning across the second year curriculum and deliver an integrated project consistent with industry practice within a particular specialisation. Aspects of the project will be delivered through individual effort while other aspects may be achieved through teamwork and collaboration. Project 2 is focussed towards "World of Work" or Industry Exposure and it is incumbent on the student to engage and shape the project towards achieving the required exposure and implementation to achieve the desired outcomes.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROJECT 3

Pre-requisites: Project 2, Applications Development Theory 2 & Practice 2, Information Systems 2

Course outline: This offering is intended to provide students with an opportunity to integrate learning across the third year curriculum and deliver an integrated project consistent with industry practice within a particular specialisation. Project 3 is focussed towards Professional Practice and it is incumbent on the student to engage and shape the project towards obtaining the required exposure and implementation to achieve the desired outcomes.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROJECT MANAGEMENT 3

Pre-requisites: Information Management 2

Course outline: This offering is intended to provide students with exposure to the basic principles of project management. This course is a compulsory course within the Diploma in ICT programme that currently supports specialisations in Applications Development, Communications Networks and Multimedia Applications. Although project management has been an established field for many years, managing information technology requires ideas and information that go beyond standard project management. By weaving together theory and practice, this course presents an understandable, integrated view of the many concepts skills, tools, and techniques involved in project management.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROJECT PRESENTATION 3

Pre-requisites: Applications Development Theory 2 & Practice 2, Information Systems 2, Project 2

Course outline: This offering is intended to provide students with an opportunity to showcase their Portfolios f Evidence as a culminating demonstration to the broad disciplinary exposure that they have experienced over the course of the Diploma curriculum and particularly their final year of study. It is also an opportunity for students to market themselves to the industry and/or venture capitalists to secure industry placement, or to launch their own entrepreneurial ventures respectively.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY:

- **SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT**
- **COMMUNICATION NETWORKS**
- **INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY MANAGEMENT**

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

ADVANCED COMMUNICATION NETWORKS 4

Pre-requisites: Communication Networks 4

Course outline: The subject scope covers optical data networks on introductory level such as: advantages of optical data networks over traditional wired data networks, concepts, principles, major network devices structure and functionality, typical architectures, future trends and prospectives.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ADVANCED DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE 4

Pre-requisites: Development Software 4

Course outline: This subject is a follow up to Development Software 4, with a strong emphasis on service oriented architectures, design patterns and principles of algorithm formulation. Critical reasoning with respect to the rationale for design choices is emphasized.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ADVANCED INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY MANAGEMENT 4

Pre-requisites: Information & Technology Management 4

Course outline: This subject is comprised of the following topics viz the role of strategic information within an organisation; the use of strategic tools within a specified business context; strategic planning with a specific focus on an organisation's information systems; the integration of IT and IS plans within an organisation's strategic business plan.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

BUSINESS FUNDAMENTALS 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The intent of the subject is to make our essentially technically-oriented students more aware of the world of business and management. Business Fundamentals is divided into two sections: Section 1 deals with the "world of business" and includes talks on basic economics, law, politics, Porter's Value Chain, the business environment and the "PESTEL" analysis model amongst other topics. Section 2 focusses on business from an internal perspective by looking at the key generic functions as identified by Porter such as finance, marketing etc. An overview of management practice is also given, especially in the Southern African context.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMPUTER SECURITY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Computer Security is an elective subject and is thus designed to meet the needs of all of the B Tech IT streams. It considers information and computer security from both technical and management perspectives and covers issues such as risk assessment and mitigation, firewalls, encryption and the Public Key Infrastructure, malware, physical and logical security, biometrics, security policies and the role of the security specialist.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DATA ADMINISTRATION 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The aim of this subject is to provide the student with sufficient skills to be able to understand and apply the issue of data administration within an organisation. The student should be able to work in both teams and individually considering the latest trends in data handling to make the organisation more competitive. Data Administration is a combination of activities, standard methods, human resources and technology for the central planning, documentation and management of data from the perspective of their meaning and value to the organisation as a whole. It also deals with the controlling, acquisition, analysis, storage, retrieval, distribution and communication of data. The responsibility or organisation is done effectively and efficiently in automated information systems.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DATABASE SYSTEMS 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The aim of this subject is to provide the student with sufficient skills to be able to effectively design database structures to support IT business systems, apply modern analysis techniques and methodologies and design and implement internet solutions in a client-server environment.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Development Software 4 is intended to provide participants with high level theoretical skills and to combine theory with practice in a way that allows participants to make effective use of theoretical concepts in practical situations. Focus is given to specification and design of large software systems using object oriented design principles.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HEALTH INFORMATICS FUNDAMENTALS 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: At the end of this subject, the student should have the basic knowledge and skills in ICT as it is needed and used in medicine and healthcare to be prepared for a career in Health Informatics in academic, healthcare, government or industrial settings.
The following topics are covered in this subject viz: Basic terms and concepts in Health Informatics, Legal and ethical issues, Health care systems using information for healthcare professionals, Using Health Information for patients and communities, Information systems in healthcare, Using information technologies in Healthcare, Socio-technical issues in health care, Integration of service, work and information flows in practice, Principles of Project Management (integrated with other topics) and Information recording in healthcare

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY MANAGEMENT 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject is comprised of the following topics. How Information Systems/ IT are integrated into an organisation's business processes. The basic strategic elements of IS information systems Business tools that are used to determine the strategic IS plans for an organisation. Management requirements to develop an IS system. How information systems are used to communicate within an organisation. Issues around outsourcing, in-sourcing, buy or building of IS systems. Recommendations regarding the selection and acquisition of IS and IT software and hardware.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

NETWORKS 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The aim of "Networks 4" is to provide the student with sufficient skills to be able to understand and apply the issues of networking, including CCNP training for advanced skills in building enterprise level, switched networks and applications; integrate Advanced Technologies such as VoiP and Wireless and troubleshooting skills. The student should be able to work in both teams and individually considering the latest trends in data communication to make the organisation more competitive. The course is presented as a semester course and the work is covered in a period of six months.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROJECT 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The aim of Project 4 is to provide the student with sufficient skills to: identify an appropriate and attainable research problem, conduct a literature study that identifies all of the main issues of the research study, generate appropriate research questions to guide the research, identify and describe the main components of the research, present the research study using visual communication, conduct the research within the constraints identified and present it in a written format, present the research study to a panel of academics and compile a portfolio with all of the research deliverables.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROJECT MANAGEMENT 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Project Management 4 provides students with the ability to work on projects in an information technology setting. While many examples are discussed of project management in a software setting and a networking setting, for the most part the principles of project management are presented in a fashion that allows for their use in a number of other settings. This is achieved by an emphasis on the fundamental concepts underlying project management and the issues and techniques that often arise in praxis.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

RESEARCH METHODOLOGY

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The aim of Research Methodology is to provide the student with sufficient skills to: explain the aim of research and the types of knowledge and the difference between types of research and research paradigms as well as research methods, to identify and describe the research process, research topic, title and research problem. How to conduct the study, collect, analyse and present data, conduct a literature study and present a review of a specific research topic. Apply appropriate statistical techniques to sets of data and to explain concepts such as data, information, knowledge, variables, validity, reliability, deductive and inductive reasoning. Conceptualise and operationalise the research process.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SOFTWARE ENGINEERING & DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: “Software Engineering & Design 4” involves the specification, design, construction and verification of large software systems. This course is aimed at extending a student’s knowledge of the entire software development process. The purpose of software engineering is to adapt engineering practices to software development, so we can design better software which is characterized by maintainability, correctness, re-usability, portability and efficiency.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

STRATEGIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The aim of "Strategic Information Systems 4" is to provide the student with sufficient knowledge to define strategic information systems and indicate how it can be applied, describe the major features of an Enterprise Information System (EIS), evaluate the differences between different types of EIS, evaluate and apply various business models to the information of a specified enterprise, describe an ERP system, describe and model different business processes and their importance to an organisation, identify and describe appropriate tools to re-organise a business based on its business processes and to describe the appropriate quality metrics and quality initiatives and their associated tools.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DEPARTMENT OFFICE-BEARERS

Position	Name	Telephone	Fax	E-mail
Head of Department	Prof N Bechan	021 469 1050		bechann@cput.ac.za
JOURNALISM & PHOTOGRAPHY				
Administrative Assistant	Ms A America	021 469 1110		americaa@cput.ac.za
PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT				
Secretary	Ms N Rice	021 469 1042		ricen@cput.ac.za
FILM & VIDEO TECHNOLOGY				
Administrative Assistant	Ms K Arendse	021 460 3198		arendsek@cput.ac.za

ACADEMIC STAFF (PERMANENT)

Name	Position	Qualifications
Prof N Bechan	Head of Department	PhD (Media & Com), MA, BA Hons, BA, HED
Mr J A Mathurine	Senior Lecturer	Masters Degree in Journ & Media Studies, B Tech (Journ), ND: Journ,
Ms D A Porthen	Senior Lecturer	M Tech: PRM, BTech: PRM, ND: PRM
Dr LJ Theo	Senior Lecturer	PhD (Non-Practising Attorney), MSoc Sci (African Studies), BA LLB
Ms R Abrahams	Lecturer	M Tech: PRM, BTech: PRM, ND: PRM
Mr C Adonis	Lecturer	B.Sc, B Tech: Photog, ND: Photog, Secondary Teachers' Dip.
Mr J Borkum	Lecturer	M Degree in Broadcast & Elect. Comm Arts, BA (Hons),
Mr I Cridland	Lecturer	MBL
Dr A Jamal	Lecturer	PhD, MA, BA (Hons)
Mr C King	Lecturer	MA Journ & Media Studies
Dr B Makwambeni	Lecturer	PhD, MSc Media & Soc. Studies, BA General Degree, BA Special Hons Degree, Post Grad Dip. Media & Comm.
Ms T Nondzube	Lecturer	M Tech: PRM, BTech: PRM, ND: PRM
Ms A Toyer	Lecturer	M Tech: PRM, BTech: PRM, ND: PRM
Ms Z Vallie	Lecturer	M Tech: Design, NHD: Photog, ND: Photog.

QUALIFICATIONS OFFERED

FILM & VIDEO TECHNOLOGY

Undergrad/ Postgrad	Qualification Type	Qual Code	Qualification Name	Campus Offered	Minimum Duration (Years)	Work-Integrated Learning
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDFVTC	ND: Film & Video Technology	Cape Town	3 Years	1 year

JOURNALISM

Undergrad/ Postgrad	Qualification Type	Qual Code	Qualification Name	Campus Offered	Minimum Duration (Years)	Work-Integrated Learning
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDJURN	ND: Journalism	Cape Town	3 Years	6 months
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTJOUN	B Tech: Journalism	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a

PHOTOGRAPHY

Undergrad/ Postgrad	Qualification Type	Qual Code	Qualification Name	Campus Offered	Minimum Duration (Years)	Work-Integrated Learning
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDPHGY	ND: Photography	Cape Town	3 Years	n/a
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTPHGY	B Tech: Photography	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a

PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT

Undergrad/ Postgrad	Qualification Type	Qual Code	Qualification Name	Campus Offered	Minimum Duration (Years)	Work-Integrated Learning
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDPRMT	ND: Public Relations Management	Cape Town	3 Years	1 Year
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTPRMT	B Tech: Public Relations Management	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTPRMC	M Tech: Public Relations Management (Course-driven degree)	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTPRMR	M Tech: Public Relations Management (Research-based degree)	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a

ND: FILM & VIDEO TECHNOLOGY

Course aim

The programme cultivates a supportive environment to maximise growth and to foster a professional work ethic. The aim of the course is to shape students for the real world of film and television production and to simulate industry conditions as closely as possible.

High quality learning opportunities are offered to allow students to gain valuable experience and to reach their full potential. Classes are small with practical-hands on sessions supported by appropriate theory.

During the three year programme, the student will be involved in producing, writing, filming, editing, recording and mixing sound and lighting for one or all of the following: documentary, music video, public service announcement and short fiction films.

Career opportunities

Students are prepared for careers in the feature film, commercial and television industries.

Admission requirements

- Candidates' matric results are assessed according to a points score counted by adding the rating of the best five subjects, as per the Achievement Levels detailed in the National Senior Certificate. Candidates must achieve a minimum of 20 points for matric (or provisionally for their mock matric exams) to qualify for consideration.
- Candidates must perform well in English, with a minimum of the equivalent of Achievement Level 4 (50 – 59%) for matric.
- All candidates must submit a letter of motivation together with their application form, or their applications will not be considered.
- Candidates will be considered for (but not guaranteed) interviews if they have a minimum score of 20 points for matric (or provisionally for their mock matric exams), plus a compelling letter of motivation which demonstrates adequate proficiency in English, expresses a compelling passion to become a film-maker, a willingness to work hard and a strong likelihood of success in the film industry.
- Candidates chosen for interview will meet with lecturers, who gauge the candidate's ability to deal with the complexity of the theory component of the course, the candidate's drive and interest in film-making and the candidate's ability to work in a team environment. Candidates are allocated a score of between 1 and 5, with 1 being the lowest and 5 being the most likely to make it successfully through the course.

Duration of course

Full-time: three years, including a period of work integrated learning in the third year of the course.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: FILM & VIDEO TECHNOLOGY

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDFVTC

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	COM111S	Communication Science 1	C		5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	DPP100S	Directing & Pre-Production Practice 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	FAD100S	Film Appreciation & Development 1	C		5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	FPR100S	Production Practice 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	FVP100S	Video Production 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	ITV100S	Introduction to Video 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PPP100S	Post Production Practice 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRA100S	Practical Productions 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	COM200S	Communication Science 2	C	COM111S	5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	DPP200S	Directing & Pre-Production Practice 2	C	DPP100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	FAD200S	Film Appreciation & Development 2	C	FAD100S	5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	FPR200S	Production Practice 2	C	FPR100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	FSC100S	Film Science 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PPP200S	Post Production Practice 2	C	PPP100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PRA200S	Practical Productions 2	C	PRA100S	5	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DPP300S	Directing & Pre-Production Practice 3	C	DPP200S	6	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	FPR300S	Production Practice 3	C	FPR200S	6	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	FVI300S	Film & Video In Service Training (WIL)	C		6	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PPP300S	Post-Production Practice 3	C	PPP200S	6	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRA300S	Practical Productions 3	C	PRA200S	6	20.04	0.167	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 20

PROMOTION CRITERIA

Students will be promoted to the following year of study, provided that all subjects at the lower level, have been passed. All subjects must be passed with a 50% minimum for promotion. All the practical work, at the lower level, must have been performed to the prescribed standard.

RE-ADMISSION

A student who fails a year may be re-admitted to a level, provided that 50% of the subjects at that level have been passed.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- Students who fail 50% or more of their subjects, in any given year, will not be re-admitted to the course.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for e.g. extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: FILM & VIDEO TECHNOLOGY

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

FIRST YEAR

COMMUNICATION SCIENCE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The course deals with information gathering and basic research concepts together with an introduction to communication theory.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

FILM APPRECIATION & DEVELOPMENT 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Film Appreciation: The course deals with the anatomy that constitutes films and the language needed to analyse all films. The course discusses how various parts of a film – story, plot, characterization, theme, tone, style and film form all combine to create a whole, within the context of a global film industry.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRODUCTION PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Narratology: The course deals with Narratology and storytelling as a visual exercise within a context of historical narrative development. Students are introduced to the role of the screenwriter and his/her relationship with the crew.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INTRODUCTION TO VIDEO 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Digital Cinematography Theory: The course covers the aspects of technology related to the principles of digital video production: exposure, lighting, grips and sound.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DIRECTING & PRE-PRODUCTION PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Producing Theory: The course deals with "Film Language". Students are introduced to the role of the producer, director, and all other crew, terminology used by the director and rules of film grammar that the director must apply.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRACTICAL PRODUCTIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Producing Practice: The course, linked with Directing and Pre-Production Practice 1, deals with the more practical elements of "Film Language". Students explore and practice the roles of the producer, director, and all other crew.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INTRODUCTION TO VIDEO 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Digital Cinematography Theory: The course covers the aspects of technology related to the principles of digital video production: exposure, lighting, grips and sound.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

VIDEO PRODUCTION 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Digital Cinematography Practice: The course covers the aspects of technology related to the principles of digital video production: exposure, lighting, grips and sound.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

POST PRODUCTION PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The course deals with the theory and practice of editing motion picture and sound. Students are first taught the basics of editing theory and editing conventions and then advance to hands-on work on non-linear video editing software.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SECOND YEAR

COMMUNICATION SCIENCE 2

Pre-requisites: Communication Science 1

Course outline: Following a revision of mass communication theory, the learner is introduced to the South African media industry and how it works in a global context. Students analyse and discuss issues surrounding censorship, media ownership, representation and media literacy.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

FILM APPRECIATION & DEVELOPMENT 2

Pre-requisites: Film Appreciation & Development 1

Course outline: In this course, students are introduced to the influential periods of film history and to international film cultures, with a focus on African and South African films. Various film cultures are examined in order to view their contribution to modern day film production.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRODUCTION PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisites: Production Practice 1

Course outline: Screenwriting: This course deals with all aspects of producing a PSA and Short film. Students explore further the role of the Screenwriter and students are introduced to the demanding concepts of “story-telling”, structure, characterisation, dialogue and how to apply these in their own screenplays.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DIRECTING & PRE-PRODUCTION PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisites: Directing & Pre-Production Practice 1

Course outline: This courses deals with all aspects of producing a PSA and a Short film. Students explore further the role of the director and producer, and students are introduced to the demanding concepts of translating scripts into films. The role of the Director is explored in more detail, together with terminology used by the Director and rules of film grammar that the Director must apply. More advanced directing skills are practiced, with an emphasis on how to successfully work with actors.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

FILM SCIENCE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Digital Cinematography: The course covers the aspects of technology related to the principles of HD digital video production: exposure, lighting, grips and sound.

Assessment:All assessments are compulsory.

PRACTICAL PRODUCTIONS 2

Pre-requisites: Practical Productions 1

Course outline: Production Aesthetics and Design: The course covers film aesthetics and production design/art department practice.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

POST PRODUCTION PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisites: Post Production Practice 1

Course outline: Editing: The course deals with the theory and practice of editing motion picture and sound. Students build on their skills acquired in first year and are introduced to advanced editing theory and editing conventions related to industry-standard editing technology. A strong emphasis is also placed on post-production work flows, sound and basic visual effects.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THIRD YEAR

PRODUCTION PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Production Practice 2

Course outline: Screenwriting: The course deals with developing a story and writing the script for this story as a commercially viable product. Three film scripts are chosen and developed into a professional product ready for production.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DIRECTING & PRE-PRODUCTION PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Directing & Pre-Production Practice 2

Course outline: Directing and Producing: The course deals with the ability of the students to plan and produce a short film, and prepare a professional “Prospectus” for the product. Film projects are pitched to a professional pitching panel, from which three are chosen and developed into a professional product ready for distribution. Weekly tutorial sessions deal with media theory and pre-production work needed for students to make their film.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PRACTICAL PRODUCTIONS 3

Pre-requisites: Practical Productions 2

Course outline: Film Medium: The course deals with niche and developed aspects of the use of film medium, notably camera, sound and lighting practice. All three areas are taught by industry professionals.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

POST PRODUCTION PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Post Production Practice 2

Course outline: Editing: The course deals with the theory and practice of editing motion picture and sound. Students are taught more advanced elements of editing theory and editing conventions, and practice editing using industry-standard software.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

FILM & VIDEO IN SERVICE TRAINING (WORK INTEGRATED LEARNING)

Pre-requisites: All first and second year subjects

Course outline: Internships: Level 3 of the Film and Video Programme is the final year of the diploma and has been designed to facilitate a smooth transition between tertiary education and the work environment. The coverage of this subject extends to various aspects of theoretical and practical filmmaking required to support mastery of student learning at an emerging professional level. This includes input on entrepreneurship theory and practice, work-search skills and workplace-based learning. The in-service training gives students an introduction into the real world dynamics of filmmaking in South Africa.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ND: JOURNALISM

Course aim

Students learn to undertake research driven journalism for news, feature and current affairs journalism on multiple platforms using traditional and new media technologies. Learning and production opportunities are provided to assess students' practical and intellectual competences to produce media for different markets and audiences in an ethical manner in preparation for Professional Practice 1.

Career opportunities

A wide variety of possible employment opportunities are available to graduates in media and related fields such as: broadcast journalism, sports journalism, photo journalism, fashion journalism, technical writing, business journalism, foreign correspondence, newspaper reporting, freelance journalism, B2B reporting, sub-editing and online journalism, among others.

Students learn the professional techniques and tools to write, edit, design and produce research-driven news, feature and current affairs journalism for digital and traditional media platform and audiences. Students will be enriched by the study of journalism in society. Learning and production opportunities are provided to assess students' practical and intellectual competences to produce media for different markets and audiences in an ethical manner in preparation for Media Practice 3.

Admission requirements

- An excellent command of English
- At least a 'C' symbol or 5 points (60%-69%) in English
- At least a 'D' symbol or 4 points (50%-59%) in the first additional language
- A keen interest in local, national and international affairs will be an advantage
- Applicants who meet the first three requirements will be invited to participate in a selection test. The test mainly comprises of English (knowledge of language and writing) and general knowledge.
- Those who pass the test will be asked to come in for an interview

Duration of course

Full-time: Three years, including a period of Workplace Based Learning in the second semester of the third year of the course. Workplace Based Learning facilitates a smooth transition between tertiary education and the work environment.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: JOURNALISM

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDJURN

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	JNR100S	News Reporting 1	C		5	47.4	0.395	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	MCM100S	Media Communication 1	C		5	27.96	0.233	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	MIM100S	Media Information Management 1	C		5	15.84	0.132	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	MPR100S	Media Production 1	C		5	28.8	0.240	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	ARG200S	Advanced Reporting 2	C	JNR100S	5	42	0.350	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	MCM200S	Media Communication 2	C	MCM100S	5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	MPR200S	Media Production 2	C	MPR100S	5	54	0.450	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	ARG300S	Advanced Reporting 3	C	ARG200S	6	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	MPR300S	Media Production 3	C	MPR200S	6	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	JPR300S	Media Practice 3 (WIL)	C	ARG300S MPR300S	6	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 10

PROMOTION CRITERIA

- Students will not be allowed to do a second course in a particular subject, until they have passed the first course.
- First year students will not be admitted to the second year, unless they pass ALL of the prescribed subjects in the first year.
- Students will only be permitted to begin Workplace Based Learning and register for “Media Practice 3” if they have passed all preceding first, second and third year subjects (9 subjects in total).

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- No student is allowed re-admission with a pass of less than 50% of the subjects.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University’s prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for eg extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student’s appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

B TECH: JOURNALISM

Course aim

Students are taught how to develop their writing skills. They are also given an introduction to media management, including the inner workings of newspapers and broadcast houses and are taught the basics of research methodology to generate an applied research project in the field of journalism. Classes are usually scheduled to take place after hours and over weekends.

Career opportunities

A B Tech in Journalism provides a good stepping stone to a career in media management.

A wide variety of possible employment opportunities are available to graduates in the media and related industries such as:

Broadcast journalists, sports journalists, photo journalism, fashion journalism, technical writing, foreign correspondent, newspaper reporter, freelance writer, news service writer, copywriter for advertisements and book editors. Editors work with journalists and writers of all sorts to help refine the message and clarify their presentations. Today this also consists of bloggers, social media specialists and others who work in the world of new media.

Admission requirements

- A National Diploma in Journalism or an equivalent qualification with a pass aggregate of 60 percent.
- At least one year experience in Journalism.
- Applicants who meet the previous two requirements will be asked to come in for an interview.

Duration of course

Full-time: One year

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus.

B TECH: JOURNALISM

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTJOUN

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	BRS400S	Basic Research Project 4	C		7	36	0.300	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	EMN400S	Editorial Management 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	SPR400S	Specialist Reporting 4	C		7	72	0.600	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 3

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: JOURNALISM

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

ADVANCED REPORTING 2

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students are prepared to report on national and regional politics as well as business and economic affairs. The course explores new approaches to news, feature and review writing.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ADVANCED REPORTING 3

Pre-requisites: Advanced Reporting 2

Course outline: This course introduces students to key concepts in critical theory and to help them understand, contextualise and critique contemporary debates about the influence of the culture industries (with specific attention to mass and networked media) on media practice and society. In addition, students will learn to produce well planned, accurately researched, contextualised and marketable features for publication in general or specialist publication.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MEDIA COMMUNICATION 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students' fundamental communicative competence in English and one other South African language is deepened. Students are introduced to the study of the media to learn to critique journalism as a social practice and media as texts. The learner will use a framework of basic political theory to describe, discuss and contextualise news reports, interviews, academic assignments and contemporary events.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MEDIA COMMUNICATION 2

Pre-requisites: Media Communication 1

Course outline: Deepens student understanding of culture and the role that communities play in constructing meaning from media texts. Learners refine their critical ability to use English in writing and deconstructing media texts. Learners understand ethical issues that media practitioners face daily, as well as the conceptual parameters of what constitutes an ethical media industry.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MEDIA INFORMATION MANAGEMENT 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students learn to employ ICT's and software for basic media production and research. Online media explores principles underpinning the application of digital and networked journalism for multiplatform news production.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MEDIA PRACTICE 3 (WORK INTEGRATED LEARNING)

Pre-requisites: All 1st & 2nd year subjects, plus Advanced Reporting 3 & Media Production 3

Course outline: Students deepen competence and reflective engagement with media and journalism practice through successful completion of Work Based Learning during the second semester of their third year of study.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MEDIA PRODUCTION 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Explores the history , theory and practice of Radio Journalism, with particular focus on how it differs from Print. Students learn how to research, script, edit and compile audio news bulletins, as well as produce basic radio programmes for a modern radio station. Learners also develop visual literacy and photographic skills to compose, shoot and edit good photographs and integrate them into editorial media.

MEDIA PRODUCTION 2

Pre-requisites: Media Production 1

Course outline: Students are introduced to knowledge, skills and values to research, report and publish professional news and features for online print and television.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MEDIA PRODUCTION 3

Pre-requisites: Media Production 2

Course outline: Students enhance competences for generation, research and production of more complex and contextual print and TV news journalism

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

NEWS REPORTING 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Covers traditional Journalism in terms of Beat Reporting while incorporating the massive changes caused by the arrival of the Internet and the rise of New Media. Lectures on court reporting augment students' knowledge of news writing. The course includes an introduction to basic legal concepts, the constitution and the Bill of Rights, the balancing of competing rights and restrictions on media freedom.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: JOURNALISM

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

BASIC RESEARCH PROJECT 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students apply modes, methods and tools for research to produce a basic Academic Research Project focused on a research problem in the field of South African journalism.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

EDITORIAL MANAGEMENT 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students learn how to manage people and editorial in increasingly transforming news environments while still delivering competitive media products.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SPECIALIST REPORTING 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Students are equipped to research, write and package long-form and narrative for print and online.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: PHOTOGRAPHY

Course aim

The course equips students with the skills, knowledge and discipline essential for a successful career in photography.

Graduates are competent, self-motivated and creative, producing work with a strong emphasis on conceptual content and technical skills appropriate to a particular professional context.

Career opportunities

Commercial, advertising, fashion, publishing houses, printers and freelance work. Employment opportunities also exist in state-supported institutions such as museums, library services and medical institutions.

Admission requirements

- A Matric Certificate (or, for Foreign Applicants, an Approved Equivalent) with a Bachelor's Pass;
- A D-symbol average matric pass;
- A minimum score of 4 (50%-59%) in the Home Language and First Additional Language (one of which must be English);
- **Mathematics** and/or **Science** and/or **Art** are considered plus points in an application, and will definitely stand the student in good stead;
- A strong (written) motivation for wanting to study photography (part of the Questionnaire to be filled out in the application process);
- A duly signed note of approval from the applicant's sponsor(s)/parent(s)/guardian(s) of his/her choice of study field, and confirmation of availability of the requisite finances;
- Suitable candidates will be requested to attend an interview with lecturing staff and present a personal portfolio of 12 photographs taken by themselves. In addition, they must present a written and illustrated document on their own selection of 'good' photographs selected from magazines.

Duration of course

Full-time: Three years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: PHOTOGRAPHY

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDPHGY

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	APP100S	Applied Photography 1	C		5	78	0.650	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PRR100S	Professional Practice1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	THP100S	Theory of Photography 1	C		5	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	VIC100S	Visual Communication 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	APP200S	Applied Photography 2	C	APP100S	5	78	0.650	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PRR200S	Professional Practice 2	C	PRR100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	THP200S	Theory of Photography 2	C	THP100S	5	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	VIC200S	Visual Communication 2	C	VIC100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	APP300S	Applied Photography 3	C	APP200S	6	78	0.650	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PRR300S	Professional Practice 3	C	PRR200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	THP300S	Theory of Photography 3	C	THP200S	6	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	VIC300S	Visual Communication 3	C	VIC200S	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 12

PROMOTION CRITERIA

- A student shall only be promoted to the next level of study if he/she has passed all of the prescribed subjects for the current level of study.
- Automatic re-admission if the candidate has passed at least 50% of the prescribed subjects, for the particular level of study.
- Candidates will be placed on a waiting list, subject to available place in the course, if they have passed less than 50% of the prescribed subjects for the particular level of study.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for example extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

B TECH: PHOTOGRAPHY

Course aim
This qualification equips graduates to make a contribution through research to the application, evaluation and existing knowledge of a specialised area of photography.

Career opportunities
Commercial advertising, fashion, publishing houses, printers and freelance work. Employment opportunities also exist in state-supported institutions such as museums, library services and medical institutions.

Admission requirements
A Diploma in Photography (or recognized equivalent qualification) with at least 60% in the final year subjects.

Programme structure
This is a research-based course in which the student is placed under the guidance of a supervisor who will assist in both the practical and theoretical or written research components of the course.

At the end of the period of study, the student must have completed a written report and a body of work which will be exhibited on campus. A panel of staff, assisted by external moderators, will assess the exhibition. Students must satisfy the external moderators that they have fulfilled the requirements towards the Degree.

Duration of course
Full-time: One year

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus.

B TECH: PHOTOGRAPHY

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTPHGY

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	APP400S	Applied Photography 4	C		7	78	0.650	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	RMT101S	Research Methods & Techniques	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	THP400S	Theory of Photography 4	C		7	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 3

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA: PHOTOGRAPHY

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

APPLIED PHOTOGRAPHY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Principles of film-based photography, pinhole cameras, contact printing, darkroom processing. Principles of digital SLR cameras, functions, exposure systems, lenses. Introduction to imaging software, light room. Introductory projects in elementary studio lighting, available lighting and reflectors.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLIED PHOTOGRAPHY 2

Pre-requisites: Applied Photography 1

Course outline: Advanced DSLR camera application. Studio lighting for portrait and product. Exploration of genres towards a portfolio. Image preparation to a high level for print. Adobe Photoshop application.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

APPLIED PHOTOGRAPHY 3

Pre-requisites: Applied Photography 2

Course outline: Image production to an industry entry-level standard in genres including portraiture, the large exterior environment, buildings, corporate publications, people, sport, fashion, documentary and food photography. In addition, a specialised portfolio of 6 images in an approved direction is produced. Images are prepared to the highest level for print.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL PRACTICE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Photographic education and career possibilities. Professionalism. Code of ethics/conduct for the professional photographer. The photographer as entrepreneur. Forms of business. The photographer's assistant. Employing professional services. Choices in setting up a business. The location of a photographic business

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL PRACTICE 2

Pre-requisites: Professional Practice 1

Course outline: Business opportunities. Market research. Competitive advantage. Marketing and promotion. Selling. Business decisions & the economics of one unit. Financial statements. Financial ratios & break-even analysis. Financing your business.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROFESSIONAL PRACTICE 3

Pre-requisites: Professional Practice 2

Course outline: Protecting your business: insurance, legal issues. Taxes & government regulations. Managing expenses, credit & cash flow. Managing production, distribution, & operations. Managing purchasing & inventory. How to value a business.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF PHOTOGRAPHY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Principles of film-based photography, pinhole cameras, contact printing, darkroom processing. Basics of lenses and ray tracing, light, exposure, shutter systems, aperture and depth of field.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF PHOTOGRAPHY 2

Pre-requisites: Theory of Photography 1

Course Outline: Sensitometry. Translation of digital data into graph form. Lens types and design principles. Depth of field, hyperfocal distance, aperture, circle of confusion. Optical formulae, lens calculations. Additive and subtractive colour models. Image scanning and correction. File formats and their applications. Properties of electromagnetic energy. Adobe Photoshop. Introduction to report writing and referencing. MS Word features and application.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF PHOTOGRAPHY 3

Pre-requisites: Theory of Photography 2

Course Outline: Colour calibration and colour systems. Digital archiving principles and theory. Intermediate report writing with referencing. Large-format digital camera theory and practice. Advanced lens theory and practice. Principles of web design for self-promotion. Advanced digital imaging theory and practice. Photo-mechanical reproduction. HDR imaging. Panoramic photography and application. Advance Adobe Photoshop and Acrobat.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

VISUAL COMMUNICATION 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Career choice. Teaching students how to raise their profile. Literacy skills. Writing to communicate. Referencing guide. Plagiarism. Presentation skills. Diversity awareness. Visual Inspiration & Appreciation: People, Places, & Objects. Visual Literacy. Physiology of Vision. Visual Perception. Psychology of Colour. Visual Interpretation: Principles of Design & Conceptualisation.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

VISUAL COMMUNICATION 2

Pre-requisites: Visual Communication 1

Course outline: Critique and Evaluation. Photographic Seeing. Perception. The Physiology of Vision. Gestalt Theory. The Information Theory. The Emotion Thesis. The Psychology of Colour. Pre-visualization. The Image Management Pathway. The Primary Visual Elements. The Secondary Visual Elements. Principles of Image Composition. Movements in Photography. Film Analysis. The Social Impact of Still Photography. Aesthetics in Commercial Photography.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

VISUAL COMMUNICATION 3

Pre-requisites: Visual Communication 2

Course outline: Life Skills. Writing Skills. Harvard Reference Guide. Plagiarism. Criticising Photographs. Personal Photographs and Popular Photography. Heritage: Past, Present & Future. Freedom of Mass Media: Newspapers, Tabloids, Magazines, Television, Internet. Photography in the Age of Electronic Imaging. Social Networks. Censorship & Social Responsibility. Media Ethics. Photo Agencies. Stock Photography.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: PHOTOGRAPHY

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

APPLIED PHOTOGRAPY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Production of an advanced level photographic portfolio in an approved specialised direction, displaying consistency and mastery to an industry level. The images are produced to support an evolved research question and problem.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

RESEARCH METHODS & TECHNIQUES

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The writing of a research proposal in an approved format. Identifying a research problem, developing a research question and sub-question, supported by a literature overview and a proposed methodology within a manageable time-frame.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

THEORY OF PHOTOGRAPHY 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Writing a mini-thesis in the standard academic format, of 50-70 pages, displaying a high level of academic writing and research referencing in order to communicate an advanced industry-related theoretical knowledge underpinning the field of specialisation. The chapters comprise, in order, the proposal as introduction, a literature review, and research methodology, analysis of data, and summary and conclusion.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT

Course aim

Public Relations is a distinctive communication function which aims to establish sustainable relationships between an organisation and its various stakeholders, with the focus to enhance the perception these stakeholders may have of the organisation.

The purpose of the course is to equip the aspiring professional with the necessary skills and competence to plan and execute public relations and communication activities to meet these and other organisation objectives.

This qualification provides the learner with a broad understanding of all the fundamental aspects of Public Relations practice. The qualification has both a theoretical and practical component and will enable the learner to create carefully planned Public Relations activities which are strategically aligned with organisational objectives and relate to the needs of the business world. A qualifying learner will be able to assess, measure and critically evaluate an organisation's current situation with regard to its relationships with key stakeholder groups. The learner will also be able to compile a fully integrated Public Relations campaign that will enable the organisation and its stakeholder groups to adapt successfully to one another. Qualifying learners will be able to manage the planning, implementation and evaluation of such Public Relations campaigns.

Career opportunities

Diplomats will be equipped with skills to manage the relationships and perceptions of an organisation, by creating and implementing planned programmes of action that will benefit its various stakeholders. These public relations activities include special events, media liaison and strategy, audio-visual preparation, crisis and reputation management, Corporate Social Investment (CSI) and various communication research activities. Employment can be "in-house" within the organisation's public relations department or at a consultancy with diverse clients ranging from celebrities, corporate and consumer organisations, to non-profit organisations and Government departments.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:

English 5 (substantial achievement: 60% - 69%)
First Additional Language 3 (moderate achievement: 40% – 49%)
Mathematics 2 (elementary achievement: 30% – 39%)
Maths Literacy 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

An achievement rating of at least 4 (50% – 59%) or better in four NSC 20-credit subjects from the designated subject list.

Submission of a prescribed portfolio:
In addition to the abovementioned admission requirements, applicants should be creative and have plenty of enthusiasm. Applicants are also required to submit a portfolio of written work.

Duration of course

Full-time: Three years, including a period of Work Integrated Learning in the third year of the course.
Part-time: Four years, including a period of Work Integrated Learning.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDPRMT

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	AUP 100S	Accounting for Public Relations Practitioners 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	BSR 100S	Business Studies: Public Relations 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	COS 101S	Communication Science 1	C		5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	EUC 103S	End-User Computing 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	ENL 100S	English 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	MSU 100S	Media Studies 1	C		5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	PUR 100S	Public Relations 1	C		5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	COS 201S	Communication Science 2	C	COS101S	5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	LAR 100S	Law: Public Relations 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	MAU 100S	Marketing & Advertising: Public Relations 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	MSU 200S	Media Studies 2	C	MSU100S	5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PUR 200S	Public Relations 2	C	PUR100S	5	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	SOP 200S	Social Psychology	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	VID 100S	Videology 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	COS 301S	Communication Science 3	C	COS201S	6	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PUR 300S	Public Relations 3	C	PUR200S	6	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PLP 300S	Public Relations Practice 3 (WIL)	C		6	60	0.500	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 17

PROMOTION CRITERIA

- All subjects must be passed with a 50% minimum for promotion.
- If a student passes 6 out of 7 subjects, they will automatically be re-admitted for the course.
- Students who are repeating subjects, may only attend class for the repeating subject in the part-time programme. The full-time class complement is for students studying at that subject programme level for the first time.
- Subject to the approval of the HOD, students will only be allowed to register for a Major in a succeeding programme level if she/he has passed all three Majors of the preceding programme level.
- Students will only be eligible to enter the third year programme level if she/he has passed all three majors (second year level) as well as passed all subjects prescribed for the first year, namely: Accounting for Public Relations Practitioners, Business Studies, English and End-User Computing. Therefore she/he must have passed 10 out of 14 subjects (including all majors) before entering industry.
- Students will only be eligible for Industry placement, if they have passed all three majors (second year level) as well as passed all subjects prescribed for the first year, namely: Accounting for Public Relations Practitioners, Business Studies, English and End-User Computing. Therefore she/he must have passed 10 out of 14 subjects (including all majors) before entering industry.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rules

- Students who fail 50% or more subjects of any given year, will not be re-admitted to the course. Therefore students must pass a minimum of 4 subjects of which 3 must be the major subjects.
- Students, who fail all major subjects registered for in any given year TWICE, will not be re-admitted to the course.
- A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

Departmental rule regarding the failing of subjects

- It is a Departmental rule that full-time students must repeat EVERY subject that they have failed the previous year on a PART-TIME basis.

- Students who study full-time are not allowed to register for more than 7 subjects (including the subjects that they are repeating) and students who study part-time are not allowed to register for more than 5 subjects (including the subjects that they are repeating).

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for e.g. extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

B TECH: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT

Course aim
The course develops the student's competence to administer and perform strategic public relations functions in a global environment.

Career opportunities
Managing advanced communication and planning strategic public relations in any corporate environment or in a consultant capacity.

Admission requirements
A National Diploma in Public Relations Management OR a recognized equivalent is required, with an average of 60% in all the subjects prescribed for the final year.

Duration of course
Full-time: One year
Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus.

B TECH: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTPRMT

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	COS401S	Communication Science 4	C		7	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	BPR400S	Management Practice 4	C		7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	MSU300S	Media Studies 3	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PUR400S	Public Relations 4	C		7	30	0.250	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	RMY103S	Research Methodology	C		7	18	0.150	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the B Tech degree: 5

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

M TECH: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT

Course aim
Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in public relations and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge.

Course structure
This programme consists of a comprehensive full research project culminating in a thesis. For the duration of the course, the student is placed under the guidance of an approved supervisor(s) who will assist and guide the candidate throughout his / her studies.

In their thesis, Master's candidates must prove that they understand a particular problem in the industry in which they have done their research, are able to analyse and set it out logically, are able to arrive at logical conclusions or a diagnosis of the problem and are then able to make proposals for the improvement / elimination of the problem. The research problem, its justification, process and outcome are reported in a thesis. The thesis must comply with the normal general technical requirements and rules with regard to scope, quality and layout.

Career opportunities
Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements
A B Tech: Public Relations Management with a pass in Research Methodology.

English proficiency
In addition to the criteria for admission, international students from countries where English is not the official language must demonstrate proof of English proficiency.

Approval by higher degrees committee
The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of course
A minimum of one calendar year full-time or two consecutive calendar years part-time.

Venue of offering
Cape Town Campus.

M TECH: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT (PURE RESEARCH OPTION)

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTPRMR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
5	Year	R5PR01R	Thesis	C		8	120	1.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 1

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

INTERRUPTION OF STUDIES

Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate. The interruption of studies form (HDC 1.9) is available on the Centre for Postgraduate Studies website. Interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

M TECH: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT (COURSE-DRIVEN DEGREE)

Course aim
Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in Public Relations Management and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge.

Career opportunities
Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements
A B Tech: Public Relations Management with an aggregate of 65% and a pass in Research Methodology. Students who enter the programme via another discipline may, in addition to the minimum admission requirements, be required to do the module Foundations for Public Relations in addition to the other modules.

English proficiency
In addition to the criteria for admission, international students from countries where English is not the official language must demonstrate proof of English proficiency.

Course structure - Course-driven degree
The course-based option is a combination of theoretical study (subjects) and a short research project culminating in a mini-thesis which, taken together, must be at least the equivalent of the comprehensive full research option. With this option, the mini-thesis component must constitute a minimum of 50% of the instructional programme.

This is an innovative personal and professional development course in strategic communication for professionals who want to acquire advanced knowledge and skills.

The course combines an e-learning environment and residential weeks. Each module is offered over a ten week period. The first four weeks consist of e-learning contact and interaction, followed by a residential week and concluded with another five-week e-learning contact, during which period final assessments take place.

A minimum of three residential weeks are scheduled. During each residential week, two modules may be covered. In addition, a residential week for Foundations of Public Relations is scheduled to accommodate students from other disciplines who may be required to complete this module.

Short research project (in addition to the subjects)
Students conduct independent research, under appropriate supervision, in a specialized area of public relations management or communication, and contribute to knowledge production in this field. For the duration of the course, the student is placed under the guidance of an approved supervisor(s), who will assist and guide the candidate throughout his / her studies.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee

The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of course

Full-time: Minimum registration of two years
Part-time: Minimum registration of two years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus.

M TECH: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT (COURSE-DRIVEN DEGREE)

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTPRMC

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
FIRST YEAR										
5	Year	MOS500S	Managing Communication Strategy 5	C		8	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
5	Year	PKC500S	Planning Stakeholder Communication 5	C		8	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
5	Year	PLR500S	Positioning Organisational Relationships 5	C		8	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
5	Year	RMY105S	Research Methodology	C		8	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
5	Year	TCS500S	Technology, Communication & Stakeholders 5	C		8	15	0.125	Continuous	Yes
SUBJECTS FOR NON-PUBLIC RELATIONS CANDIDATES:										
5	Year	FCR400S	Foundation of Public Relations 4			7	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
SECOND YEAR (APPLICABLE FOR ALL STUDENTS)										
5	Year	R5PR01C	Thesis	C		8	60	0.500	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech degree: 5 plus a mini-thesis.

A student may not register for the Thesis Component until he/she has passed all of the prescribed subjects.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

APPEAL PROCEDURE

Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate. The interruption of studies form (HDC 1.9) is available on the Centre for Postgraduate Studies website. Interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE ND: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

ACCOUNTING FOR PUBLIC RELATIONS PRACTITIONERS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject encompasses the fundamentals of accounting, including the double entry system and accounting equation with an emphasis on where this fits in an economy. The general ledger, journals, income statement and balance sheet are introduced as well as concepts on budgeting and costing. An emphasis is placed on the cash book, petty cashbook and the concept of debit and credit. Interpretation of financial statements is mentioned but not emphasized.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

BUSINESS STUDIES: PUBLIC RELATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject aims to provide the student with a theoretical and practical background of business operations and the role of business as a manifestation of economic activity. Specific functions within business organisations are analysed and discussed. Focal areas are the establishment, location, setting of objectives, and general management of an enterprise. Factors that can influence the success of an enterprise are explored.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATION SCIENCE 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject content explores the history and origin of human communication, language and codes, communication campaign, cultural influences in communication, the contexts of communication – small group, organisational, public and mass communication and digital communication.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATION SCIENCE 2

Pre-requisites: Communication Science 1

Course outline: The subject content explores communication theories (functionalism, humanism, cultural studies and structuralism), globalisation and financial communication, political communication (propaganda, persuasion, political systems, activism and negotiation) and intercultural communication.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATION SCIENCE 3

Pre-requisites: Communication Science 2

Course outline: The subject provides students with deep insight into organisations, organizational behaviour and organisational communication. It seeks to improve students' understanding of organisational life and provide them with an awareness of important communication skills. The subject introduces and discusses the following theories, concepts and perspectives: organizational theories, organisational behaviour, organizational culture, organizational ethics, leadership theories, motivation theories, organisational communication in the information age and strategic public relations.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

END USER COMPUTING 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject aims to provide the aspiring Public Relations practitioner with a basic theoretical and practical introduction to information technology and the different software programmes used in business.
The subject End User Computing I follows the ICDL syllabus:
ICDL is a new qualification which measures competency in computer skills. The ICDL syllabus is designed to cover the key concepts of computing, its practical applications and their use in the workplace and society in general. ICDL is currently recognized in more than 55 countries worldwide. The programmes taught in the programme are Microsoft Word, MS PowerPoint, MS Excel, MS Access, and MS Publisher. File management, Internet explorer, as well as Introduction to Computers.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ENGLISH 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: English for Public Relations is a subject that introduces students to information literacy and research. The key concepts and practices that underpin the course include Information Literacy (how to access, analyse, evaluate, synthesise and apply information in an academic environment) and research (formal and informal research), an introduction to qualitative and quantitative techniques, research ethics and research etiquette). The course also introduces students to academic writing (using the Harvard referencing style, defining and plagiarism etc) as well as oral presentation skills, listening skills and effective business correspondence.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

LAW: PUBLIC RELATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject content addresses concepts of law, right and justice; sources of South African law; classification of South African law; the South African Judiciary; a basic overview of the Law of Contract; common law and statutory limitations on the freedom of expression: defamation, invasion of privacy, copyright and the Films & Publications Act; general statutory limitations on the freedom of expression.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MARKETING & ADVERTISING: PUBLIC RELATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This subject aims to provide the aspiring Public Relations practitioner with a basic theoretical and practical introduction to the planning and execution of marketing and advertising in relation to Public Relations. Focal areas for exploration include market research and information services, macro and micro marketing environments, consumer behaviour, market measurement, forecasting, segmentation, targeting and positioning and finally marketing services and marketing ethics – all areas which need monitoring and communication excellence.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MEDIA STUDIES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject aims to develop knowledge of the history of the media, its expansion; understanding of the role of the mass media; the nature of news; the generation of publicity; how to work with the mass media, as well as strengthening awareness, knowledge and understanding of the impact of current affairs; to develop critical thinking and finally developing writing ability in the necessary media formats.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MEDIA STUDIES 2

Pre-requisites: Media Studies 1

Course outline: The subject aims to develop knowledge of corporate media including publications, for internal and external audiences, the importance of branding during this process as well as the importance of being able to understand finances sufficiently to put together annual reports and interim results. The application of writing and editing continue as a pivotal function of the Public Relations professional.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PUBLIC RELATIONS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The objective of this subject is to provide the aspiring Public Relations practitioner with a basic theoretical and practical introduction into the planning and executing of Public Relations. This subject concentrates on how to maintain and extend mutual understanding between an organisation and everyone it needs in order to succeed in its mission. This level of learning serves as an introduction to this career and theory is combined with practical application, such a planning and executing events and obtaining sponsorships.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PUBLIC RELATIONS 2

Pre-requisites: Public Relations 1

Course outline: This subject provides the aspiring Public Relations practitioner with a deeper insight into the Public Relations process especially to emphasise the research methodology of Public Relations as a social science. The course is also aimed at broadening the learner's

insight into knowledge of and exposure to Public Relations practice as well as the role of the PR practitioner in the management of an organisation. It aims to equip the learner for the "world of work" various practical and service-learning projects are undertaken. The learner will then present a portfolio of evidence of the work done during their period of volunteering at the organisation.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PUBLIC RELATIONS 3

Pre-requisites: Public Relations 2

Course outline: The subject aims to provide the aspiring Public Relations Practitioner with a deeper insight into the Public Relations process, while the student is engaged in experiential training. The exploration of current and emerging issues and trends that affect the functions of Public Relations are undertaken. Depth in tracking of advanced and changing PR techniques and tools, internal and external communication management and the management of PR in both corporate and consultancy environments are applied. Aspects of Integrated Communication (IC); corporate positioning; environmental scanning; corporate governance; ethics in strategic management and applicable research techniques are analysed.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PUBLIC RELATIONS PRACTICE 3 (WORK INTEGRATED LEARNING)

Pre-requisites: Public Relations 1 & 2, Communication Science 1 & 2, Media Studies 1 & 2, Accounting for Public Relations Practitioners, Business Studies, English and End User Computing.

Course outline: This subject is the applied Work Integrated Learning practice that takes place during the final year of study. Whilst in the second year, students undertake a Work Preparedness Programme and are introduced to the industry, as preparation for this subject. Students need to pass all their major subjects on second year level as well as English to be eligible for placement in industry as from 1 December. During their final year of study, students work from Monday to Thursday and attend classes on Fridays for a period of six to eight months. They have twenty-three Learning Areas and need to cover at least eight of these during the course of the year. There are three portfolio submission dates and each submission is followed by an oral evaluation with three external evaluators.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory

SOCIAL PSYCHOLOGY

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject presents a conceptual framework to Social Psychology. It explores concepts such as social cognition; social perception; the self; attitudes; stereotyping, prejudice, and discrimination; interpersonal attraction and close relationships; social influence; prosocial behaviour; aggression; groups and individuals; and applying principles of Social Psychology to Law, Health, and Business.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

VIDEOLOGY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This practical subject prepares the student for basic video camera operations. Aspects include camerawork, lighting for video, producing video for web and new media distribution, corporate video production, use of video in Public Relations campaigns, editing, composition, sound for video, history of Film and Video, the South African Film and Broadcasting Industry.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH: PUBLIC RELATIONS MANAGEMENT

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

COMMUNICATION SCIENCE 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject content explores Development Communication (modernisation, dependency, and participatory development), gender studies (feminism, language, work home roles, PR and gender and culture), international communication (high/low context cultures, urbanisation, diversity in public relations practice, language management and culture and propaganda) and communication strategy (strategy and planning, stakeholders and strategic models).

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MANAGEMENT PRACTICE 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: This is an integrated subject in several respects. First, it takes a broad view of the environment, including buyers, competitors, technology, the economy, capital markets, unions, government, and the community. Second, it takes the perspective of the organisation as a whole and examines how decisions in each functional area form a coherent business strategy. Thirdly, it is concerned with the way these decisions are translated into organisational actions through individuals. It, therefore, draws on the disciplines of Marketing, Finance, Economics, Operations and Organisational Behaviour.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

MEDIA STUDIES 3

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject aims to develop knowledge about management, particularly project managing communication projects. The subject will introduce the student to critical thinking aimed at honing writing, editing, and research skills. It will generate awareness of message reception, based on media theories, develop project management skills and implement them in the corporate publication process and stretch them through interaction with the electronic media. It will investigate the value as a social networker, the role of the website and its development from design to technical. Also included are the phenomena of blogging, facebook groups and web pull technology.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PUBLIC RELATIONS 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject will provide the student with in-depth knowledge of the strategic management of an organisation's corporate communication, as well as the strategic role to be played by senior communication executives. Activities are applied to broaden the students' perspective; it will challenge their thinking processes thoughts as well as traditional ideas of the subject area. The student will be able to think independently, conduct strategic research in the field, and know how to strategically manage communication within the broad milieu of the entire organisation in order to contribute to its goal achievement, adaptation and survival in the turbulent world of the 21st century.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

RESEARCH METHODOLOGY

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The subject aims to introduce qualitative and quantitative social science research methods commonly used in public relations to identify and solve problems. A skills set to measure objectives, to conduct evaluations in public relations and to aid business decision-making by way of research activities are applied.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

DEPARTMENT OFFICE-BEARERS

Position	Name	Telephone	E-mail
Head of Department	Post Vacant	021 469 1010	
Secretary	Ms J Khuzwayo	021 469 1014	khuzwayoj@cput.ac.za
Administrative Assistant	Ms H Mackenzie	021 460 3447	mackenzieh@cput.ac.za
Research Coordinator	Prof R de la Harpe	021 469 1015	delaharper@cput.ac.za
Postgraduate Administrator	Ms V Naidoo	021 469 1012	naidoove@cput.ac.za
Project Manager: Innovation, Technology & Partnerships	Post Vacant		
Administrator: Partnerships	Ms M Allie	021 469 1020	Alliem@cput.ac.za

ACADEMIC STAFF (PERMANENT)

Name	Position	Qualifications
Associate Professor	Post vacant	
Assoc Prof M M'Rithaa	Senior Lecturer	D Tech: Design, MTech Design, B Des (Hons), HDHET
Dr AV Chisin	Senior Lecturer	D Tech: Design, M Ed, NHD: Fine Art, ND: Fine Art
Ms R Cilliers	Lecturer	MFA, BA Fine Art, Post Grad Certificate in Education
Ms AAC Dahl	Lecturer	M Ed, BA Fine Art, HDE (Post Grad)
Ms V du Preez	Lecturer	M Tech: Design, BTech Graph. Des, ND: Graph. Des, Higher Diploma in Higher Education and Training
Ms ML Khoury	Lecturer	MPhil in Fine Art, BA Fine Art
Mr AB Loubser	Lecturer	M Tech: Photography, BA Fine Art (Graphic Design)
Ms J Ruijsch van Dugteren	Lecturer	History of Art (Hons), BA Fine Art

DEPARTMENT OFFICE-BEARERS

Position	Name	Telephone	Fax	E-mail
Head of Department	Post vacant			
Secretary	Ms Z Fatyela	021 440 2260	021 440 2259	fatyelaz@cput.ac.za

ACADEMIC STAFF (PERMANENT)

Name	Position	Qualifications
Mr N Tapela		Masters in Urban Plan, BSc Hons (Geog & Reg. Plan.), Pr. Pln
Ms B Verster	Senior Lecturer	M Tech: TRP, B Tech: TRP, ND: TRP, Pr. Pln
Dr CV Madell	Senior Lecturer	PhD, MSc LED, MCRP, BA (Hons), Pr. Pln
Mr M Mokhele	Lecturer	PhD, MCRP, BA URP, Pr. Pln
Mr KJR Newman	Lecturer	Masters in Town & Reg. Plan, BA Hons, Pr. Pln
Mr NRB Pinfold	Lecturer	Masters in Urban & Reg. Plan, B Tech: Surveying, Pr. Pln
Mr R Moodley	Technician	B Tech: TRP, ND: TRP, Pr. Pln

QUALIFICATIONS OFFERED

Undergrad/ Postgrad	Qualification Type	Qual Code	Qualification Name	Campus Offered	Minimum Duration (Years)	Work-Integrated Learning
Undergrad	National Diploma	NDTNRP	ND: Town & Regional Planning	Cape Town	3 Years	1 year
Undergrad	B Tech Degree	BTTNRP	B Tech: Town & Regional Planning	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a
Post Graduate	M Tech Degree	MTTNRR	M Tech: Town & Regional Planning	Cape Town	1 Year	n/a

ND: TOWN & REGIONAL PLANNING

Course aim

The course equips the student with the skills and knowledge required to fulfil the tasks of a planning technician such as land appraisal, planning surveys, the analysis and presentation of data by means of maps, graphs, diagrams and sketches as well as all work, including legal procedures connected with planning processes in general.

Career opportunities

The work of a town and regional planning technician is of a diverse nature and embraces the making of informed decisions about the management, development and growth of cities, towns and regions; the improvement and regeneration of urban environments; the sustainable provision of basic services infrastructure, transport networks, housing, commercial centres, industrial areas, community facilities and leisure services, while being careful to protect the natural environment and agricultural land.

Town and Regional Planners and technicians are often employed by private planning firms, local and provincial authorities, state departments and non-governmental organisations.

Professional registration

Professional registration with the South African Council for Town and Regional Planners is standard procedure in the interest of future employment.

Admission requirements

Required Senior Certificate subjects:
Home Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
First Additional Language 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)*
One of these languages shall be English or Afrikaans*
Mathematics 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)
Maths Literacy 5 (substantial achievement: 60% – 69%)

Recommended Senior Certificate subjects:
Geography 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)
Business Economics 4 (adequate achievement: 50% - 59%)
Economics 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)
Tourism 4 (adequate achievement: 50% – 59%)

Duration of course

Full-time: Three years years including one year Work-Integrated Learning in the second year of the course.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus.

NATIONAL DIPLOMA: TOWN AND REGIONAL PLANNING

QUALIFICATION CODE: NDTNRP

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
1	Year	PLG100M	Planning 1 (Mother)	C		5	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	PLG100A	Urbanisation 1 (Module A)	C		5	14.04	0.117	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	PLG100B	Settlement Planning (Module B)	C	PLG100A	5	14.04	0.117	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	CPS100M	Computer Skills 1 (Mother)	C		5	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	CPS100A	Computer Skills 1 (Module A)	C		5	5.04	0.042	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	CPS100B	Computer Skills 1 (Module B)	C	CPS100A	5	4.92	0.041	Continuous	Yes
1	Year	COM112S	Communication Skills 1	C		5	9.96	0.083	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	EMS100S	Environmental Studies 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	ISP100S	Infrastructure & Service Planning 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	PLD200S	Planning Design Studio 2	C	PGS100S	5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	PLS100S	Planning & Society 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	PRA101S	Planning Research & Analysis 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
1	Sem	PGS100S	Planning Graphics 1	C		5	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
2	Year	PPW200S	Planning Practice & Project Work 2	C	PLG100B PRA101S PLD200S	5	120	1.000	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	DPL300M	Development Planning 3 (Mother)	C		6	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	DPL300A	Real Estate Development 3 (Module A)	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	DPL300B	Housing Development & Policy Studies 3 (Module B)	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	ACA300S	Advanced CAD 3	C	CPS100B	6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
3	Sem	ENP300S	Environmental Planning 3	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	GIS300S	Geographic Information Systems 3	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	ITP300S	Infrastructure & Transport Planning 3	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	LEP200S	Legal Principles 2	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
3	Year	PDS300S	Planning Design Studio 3	C		6	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
3	Sem	PLL200S	Planning Law 2	C		6	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the National Diploma: 18

PROMOTION REQUIREMENTS

Admission to the second semester of the first year of study

For admission to the second semester, a student is required to pass at least three subjects (including Planning 1: Module 1 - Urbanisation 1, Planning Graphics 1 and Computer Skills 1A) of the five first semester subjects.

Promotion to the second year of study

A student will be admitted to Work Integrated Learning only if he/she has passed at least four of the six subjects, including the major subjects of Planning 1: Module 2 – Settlement Planning, Planning Research & Analysis 1 and Planning Design Studio 2.

Promotion to the third year of study

A student who has been registered for the second year, will not be promoted to the third level of study, unless he/she has successfully completed all of the Work Integrated Learning outputs plus all of the first year subjects.

EXCLUSION RULES

- Students who fail 50% or more of their subjects in any given year, or who fail any subject on the same level twice, will not be re-admitted to the course.
- A student registered for the National Diploma will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of six registered years, from the date of first registration.

APPEAL PROCEDURE

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Departmental Exclusion Panel, acting on behalf of the Dean of the Faculty. Unresolved cases will be dealt with by the Faculty Panel, consisting of the Dean and Departmental HODS. The letter must give full reasons for the lack of progress, for eg extenuating circumstances such as a death in the family, illness etc and it must state what plans/strategies will be put in place to ensure success in the course. A death certificate must be attached if this is stated as the reason for the lack of progress.

Should a student's appeal be successful, he/she will be required to sign a performance contract. Generally conditions will be imposed in the case of a successful appeal. If the student is re-admitted and continues not to demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the Department, the student will not be admitted to a further year of study at the University.

B TECH: TOWN & REGIONAL PLANNING

Course aim

The aim of the course is to prepare graduates to operate with greater independence than National Diploma graduates and to approach planning problems in a holistic manner, having regard for the nature of the profession which addresses land use, socio-economic, legal, environmental and managerial issues.

Career opportunities

Town and Regional Planners are employed in both the private and public sectors, locally and abroad. The nature of the work varies from diverse and generalist tasks, to specialised projects.

Generalisation or specialisation in the field is a matter of personal preference as the graduate develops in the career.

Professional registration

Professional registration with the South African Council for Town and Regional Planners is standard procedure in the interest of future employment.

Admission requirements

A National Diploma in Town & Regional Planning or a recognized equivalent qualification with an average of 60% in the third year of the course. In addition, two year's appropriate industry-related experience will be a recommendation.

Duration of course

Full-time: One year
Part-time: Two years

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus.

B TECH: TOWN AND REGIONAL PLANNING

QUALIFICATION CODE: BTTNRP

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
4	Year	SSB400S	City & Regional Planning 4	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	CMS400S	Community Studies 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	EMS400S	Environmental Studies 4	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	GIS402S	Geographic Information Systems 4	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	MAN101M	Management (Mother)	C		7	0	0.000	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	MAN101A	Project Management (Module A)	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Sem	MAN101B	Urban Development Management (Module B)	C		7	12	0.100	Continuous	Yes
4	Year	PLD400S	Planning Design 4	C		7	24	0.200	Continuous	Yes

Total number of subjects to be passed to obtain the B Tech degree: 6.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULES & APPEAL PROCEDURE

Exclusion rule

A student will be excluded if the qualification is not completed within the University's prescribed period of four registered years, from the date of first registration.

Appeal procedure

Students who are excluded, may submit a letter of appeal to the Faculty Board requesting an extension of their registration.

M TECH: TOWN & REGIONAL PLANNING

Course aim

Graduates develop the knowledge and skills required to conduct independent research in Town and Regional Planning and to contribute significantly to knowledge production through the understanding, application and evaluation of existing and new knowledge.

Coures structure

This programme consists of a comprehensive full research project culminating in a thesis. For the duration of the course, the student is placed under the guidance of an approved supervisor(s) who will assist and guide the candidate throughout his / her studies.

In their thesis, Master's candidates must prove that they understand a particular problem in the industry in which they have done their research, are able to analyse and set it out logically, are able to arrive at logical conclusions or a diagnosis of the problem and are then able to make proposals for the improvement / elimination of the problem. The research problem, its justification, process and outcome are reported in a thesis. The thesis must comply with the normal general technical requirements and rules with regard to scope, quality and layout.

Career opportunities

Graduates may follow a career in research and development in industry, or may be employed at research institutes. They are also employed in teaching and research positions in Higher Education institutions.

Admission requirements

A B Tech: Town & Regional Planning and a pass in Research Methodology.

English proficiency

In addition to the criteria for admission, international students from countries where English is not the official language must demonstrate proof of English proficiency.

Approval by Higher Degrees Committee

The title of the dissertation/thesis, as well as the names and qualifications of the appointed supervisors, must be approved by the Higher Degrees Committee before a student can commence with his/her studies.

Duration of course

A minimum of one calendar year full-time or two consecutive calendar years part-time.

Venue of offering

Cape Town Campus.

M TECH: TOWN AND REGIONAL PLANNING

QUALIFICATION CODE: MTTNRR

Period of Study	Year/Sem Subject	Subject Code	Subject Name	Compulsory or Elective	Pre-requisite Subject Codes	NQF Level	SAQA Exit Credit	HEMIS Credit	Assessment Type	Summative Assessment
5	Year	R5TP01R	Thesis	C		8	120	1.000	Continuous	N/A

Total number of subjects to be passed in order to obtain the M Tech Degree: 1.

ACADEMIC EXCLUSION RULE

During the first and every subsequent year of study, the student must demonstrate academic activity to the satisfaction of the University. All supervisors of Masters and Doctoral students are required to submit progress reports for each student at the end of each year to the Faculty's Research Committee. A student shall be excluded from and refused re-registration for the course if, in the opinion of the supervisor/s and the Faculty Board, the student fails to maintain progress in the student's studies or research project.

APPEAL PROCEDURE

Students who wish to interrupt their studies must apply to Senate. The interruption of studies form (HDC 1.9) is available on the Centre for Postgraduate Studies website. Interruption of studies may not be applied for, and will not be granted, retrospectively.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN TOWN & REGIONAL PLANNING

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

ADVANCED CAD 3

Pre-requisites: All first & second year subjects including Work Integrated Learning

Course outline: Introduction to Advanced CAD. Assessing different CAD systems useful to planners. Three-dimensional space in CAD: Defining a user coordinate system; working with multiple viewports in 3D; working with views in 3D; interactive viewing in 3D; and viewing in 3D. Preparing town plans with various CAD systems: Use of digital maps, digitalizing paper based maps, scanning, vectorizing; processing digital maps with various CAD systems; and generating thematic maps. CAD and the Internet: Publishing 2 and 3-dimensional town plans on the Internet.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNICATION SKILLS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Competent Reading: Read effectively, critically, purposefully and with understanding. Writing competently: Write clearly, concisely, correctly and logically. Speaking competently: Speak confidently, fluently, clearly and correctly; Effective listening: Listen actively and with concentration. Effective business communications: How to write letters, faxes, business reports, memorandums and emails. Meetings and decision-making: Giving notice and taking minutes. Career readiness training: Compiling a Curriculum Vitae, preparing for job interviews and interview etiquette.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMPUTER SKILLS 1 (MODULE A)

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Introduction to the use of computers and basic terminology. Using the internet as an academic support tool: Internet terminology and tasks; search engines; websites; blogs; internet social tools; and internet security and ethical issues. Use of commercial business software packages: Word processing; spreadsheets; presentations and slide shows; as well as database applications. Introduction to other useful software packages for planners: Computer aided design, geographical information systems, project management and graphic design software.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMPUTER SKILLS 1 (MODULE B)

Pre-requisites: Computer Skills 1 (Module A)

Course outline: The advantages of using CAD as a design tool in planning. Getting to know the different CAD packages: Tasks in CAD: Using basic commands and menus; controlling text in a drawing; coordinate systems; creating objects; editing methods; dimensioning; hatching; calculations; setting up print. Use of CAD in town planning: Drawing site plans and large scale layouts in a small township.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Introduction: Area analysis; spatial analysis; physical and human systems; and describing the earth. Geomorphology: Plate tectonics, earthquakes and volcanoes; weathering and slopes; drainage basins and rivers; coasts; as well as rock types and landforms. Weather and climate: Energy and weather; atmospheric moisture and precipitation; circulation patterns; and climate. Biochemical cycles and the biosphere: Biochemical cycles; soils; ecology and ecosystems.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ENVIRONMENTAL PLANNING 3

Pre-requisites: All first & second year subjects including Work Integrated Learning

Course outline: Position in the Environment: Overview of Natural Processes & Eco Systems, Humans & Nature, Living Beyond our Means; Biomes and Biosphere Planning. Approaches to Environmental Challenges: Resource Economics (Economic approaches to the Environment); Millennium Assessment; Environment and Development; Environmental conflicts and Justice; Environmental and Climatic Changes: Environmental degradation, climate change and carbon emissions, Clean Technologies; Public Participation and Conflict Resolution.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS 3

Pre-requisites: All first & second year subjects including Work Integrated Learning

Course outline: Fundamentals of GIS: Understanding the nature of GIS and getting to know the GIS community; Historical development of GIS; the different components of a GIS; functions, benefits, costs and disadvantages of GIS. Spatial Concepts: Fundamental geographic concepts and cartographic elements. Spatial Data: Types of data in GIS; Raster data & Vector data; Points, Lines and Polygons; Geographic Data Models in ArcView; and Data & spatial relationships. GIS Hardware & Software: Fundamentals of data storage; hardware; and GIS software features. Data Input, Analysis, and Output. Practical Applications of GIS.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

HOUSING DEVELOPMENT & POLICY STUDIES 3

Pre-requisites: All first & second year subjects including Work Integrated Learning

Course outline: Establishing a theoretical framework for the study of housing policy and strategy formulation. The need for government intervention in the housing delivery process: The equity and political motive; market failure; and housing as a macroeconomic policy instrument. A contextual analysis of housing policy in South Africa. Sustainable housing delivery systems: The informal settlement, self-help housing and incremental upgrade; private and public rental housing; and inner-city renewal. Role players: Government; housing financing institutions; housing institutions; and the societal dimension of housing development. Management: The housing development process; housing construction and technology; managing housing development projects. Strategy analysis and choice: Assessing the impact of housing policy and strategy.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INFRASTRUCTURE & SERVICES PLANNING 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Introduction to infrastructure planning. The surveying of land: The South African co-ordinate system and calculations; cadastral information; topographical plans and maps; cadastral documentation. Infrastructure and urban service provision: Urban water supply; Road design and storm-water management; sewerage; and the management of solid waste. Road and other transport infrastructure: Movement networks and the roads hierarchy; airports and harbours.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

INFRASTRUCTURE & TRANSPORT PLANNING 3

Pre-requisites: All first & second year subjects including Work Integrated Learning

Course outline: Existing Transport conditions in the Developing World: Case Study Overviews; Integrated and Sustainable Transport for Urban Environments; Urban non-motorised transport (NMT) Policies and Planning Mechanisms; Public Transport: Importance of Public Transport. Performance Measures, Modal Choice/split, End-user Groups, Commuters, Passenger; Special Needs Passengers; Bus Rapid Transit; Public Transport Infrastructure; Public Transport Interchanges, Public Transport Ranks, Shelters, Park & Ride Facilities and Alternative/Latest Technology for Public Transport.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

LEGAL PRINCIPLES 2

Pre-requisites: All first & second year subjects including Work Integrated Learning

Course outline: Introduction to the general principles of law and government. The law of property: Ownership, co-ownership and limitations on ownership; acquisition of ownership; protection and termination of ownership; possession and holdership; limited real rights including servitudes, restrictive conditions, and real securities. Statutory land use: Sectional titles; shareblocks; time-sharing; and housing development for retired Persons. Constitutional property law: Constitutional property law and Section 25 property rights. Contracts related to property: General principles of contract; sale; and the lease of immovable property. The town planning enterprise and the law: Forms of business enterprises and aspects of labour law. Professional Services: The law of agency, procurement and dispute resolution. Professional Registration: Professional conduct; ethics; and registration issues for planners.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PLANNING & SOCIETY 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The aim of this course is to create awareness and encourage debate amongst students around urban economic, political and social issues. Introduction to planning and society. Economic theory: Economic terms and concepts; economic systems; the development of economic thought; micro-economic principles; supply and demand; and production. Social issues: Urban culture

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PLANNING DESIGN STUDIO 2

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: To introduce the student to a range of site assessment techniques and elementary design skills through its practical application in residential developments. Introduction to the planning design studio. Focus areas of design in planning: Site development plans, layout plans and spatial development frameworks. Site analysis: Assessing the impact of site configuration; circulation patterns; local climate; shape; slope; and geo-technical conditions on development. Concept formation and programme formulation. Plan formation: Concept plans, local area concept plans, site concept plans, layout plans, local area layout plans and site layout plans. Application of plan formation principles in residential developments: Layouts for residential townships; and single site developments. Design within the public realm.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PLANNING DESIGN STUDIO 3

Pre-requisites: All first & second year subjects including Work Integrated Learning

Course outline: The planning design studio and practical applications. The layout planning process: Site Assessment; concept formation; plan formation; determining layout plan requirements and community standards; and the site layout plan guidelines. Application of layout planning principles in residential, industrial and commercial township developments. Site development plans: Site assessment including an evaluation of physical, legal and locational factors on site plan making. Application of site planning principles in the development of shopping centres, commercial developments and industrial parks. Spatial development frameworks: Strategic planning framework; the place of spatial development frameworks in the spatial development hierarchy; and urban and spatial development principles. Application of spatial development principles in the development of a neighbourhood area spatial development plan and sites with mixed use potential. Low-cost housing and in-situ upgrading:

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PLANNING GRAPHICS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The aim of this course is to expose the student to a number of practical exercises in order to develop and improve the students' general drawing and design skills. Student's need to complete the following exercises satisfactorily: Lines and lettering; scale drawings; plans and elevations; freehand sketching; colouring; and projections and sections.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PLANNING LAW 2

Pre-requisites: All first & second year subjects including Work Integrated Learning

Course outline: Planning law concerns. Planning law and administration in South Africa: Planning and the legal system; planning law history; administrative institutions; and the role of public participation in planning. Principles of planning law: Land use; land development; planning frameworks planning; and removal of restrictive title conditions. Planning law and sustainable urban development: Environmental and bio-regional planning; and the promotion of sustainable local government, shelter provision, economic development, public transport; and land reform.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PLANNING PRACTICE & PROJECT WORK 2 (WORK INTEGRATED LEARNING)

Pre-requisites: Settlement Planning, Planning Research & Analysis 1 & Planning Design Studio 2

Course outline: The Town and Regional Planning Department integrates its student internship program during year two of their three year diploma. The Department has a thick network of non-formalised partnerships in industry, NGOs and other universities, both national and international. The nature of partnerships are focused on placement of student interns for WIL, promotion and facilitation of planning research and collaborations in teaching, sourcing of guest & part-time lecturing; providing research, community outreach and service learning opportunities and joint conception and implementing of structured student studio project sites and facilitation. The duration of the experiential training period of WIL is approximately 42 weeks (1 year) beginning in Jan/Feb.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PLANNING RESEARCH & ANALYSIS 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The role of research in planning. Research problems; design; and processes. Map and Airphoto interpretation. Map reading; cartography; photogrammetry; and photo interpretation. Introduction to basic statistical techniques for planners: Frequency distribution; correlation; probability distributions; and sampling. Surveys relevant to planning: Land use; transport; housing; urban heritage, population and socio-economic surveys. Environmental analysis: Physiography and landforms; climate; water; soil; rock; flora; fauna; and ecological footprints and indicators. Socio-economic analysis: Demography; migration, gender and age composition; dependents and dependency ratios; income and employment; poverty and use of indicators.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

REAL ESTATE DEVELOPMENT 3

Pre-requisites: All first & second year subjects including Work Integrated Learning

Course outline: Introduction to land investment and development; principles of feasibility and market analysis; and principles of financial feasibility. Analysis of performance characteristics of a subject property: Institutional; physical; and locational attributes. Analysis of the market to be served: Urban structure and land markets; economic base analysis; property market dynamics; and estimating property demand and supply. Quantifying project productivity: Real estate mathematics; investment appraisal techniques; land valuation; and real estate software and spreadsheet applications. Analysis of proposed residential; retail; office; industrial; and mixed use developments. Additional topics: Property development vehicles; financing; marketing; and feasibility report writing.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

SETTLEMENT PLANNING

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: A historical overview of urban planning and policy; and New Towns. Planning principles: Land use and development control; land development and principles of layout planning; and growth management and strategic planning frameworks. Planning responses to contemporary urban problems: Urban reconstruction; local economic development; sustainable housing provision and informal settlement upgrade; sustainable urban transport provision; environmental impact assessment and sustainable urban development. Planning and the urban community: Urban power relations and conflict management.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

URBANISATION 1

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Introduction to town and regional planning theory. An overview of urbanization: Origin and evolution of settlements systems; Third World urbanisation; migration and urbanisation; and urban land use. Urban development processes: The impact of globalisation on the development of commercial; industrial; residential; and recreational spaces. The impacts of globalisation on local areas: Urban decay; unemployment; traffic; transport; poverty; health; liveability; housing; and environmental problems. Urban Management issues: Urban governance and politics.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

CORE SYLLABI FOR THE B TECH IN TOWN & REGIONAL PLANNING

Please note that the details below are a summarised version of the syllabus.
Please refer to the individual Subject Guides for more detail.

CITY & REGIONAL PLANNING 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: History of Planning: Introduction; Greek and Roman; Medieval Europe and Renaissance; Early Industrial Cities and responses to them; Modern Planning: Planning Professionalised; and critiques of modern planning. Planning Theories: Rational comprehensive planning; advocacy planning; permissive planning; mediation as planning; strategic planning; systems planning; systemic planning; and an introduction to contemporary writings. Presentations and articles for new planning principles: Advanced / contemporary planning theory; professionalism and planning; and ethics and planning.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

COMMUNITY STUDIES 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Planning and Community Development: Theoretical, Conceptual & Institutional Issues: Modes of Production, Social Formations and Varieties of Community Organisation; The Bases of Community Development (Globalisation) in a Globalising World; The Repertoire of Governance Strategies Communities, the State and Markets; Community Participation in Planning (Coalitions and Partnerships); Sustainable Livelihoods – Rural-Urban and the Straddle factor. Local Economic Development: Theory and Practice; LED Strategies, Policies and initiatives: International, Regional and Local; Case Studies; Research and development Issues in LED. Institutional and Governance Issues: Constitutional and local governance contexts; Role of State, NGOs and CBOs; Conflict Resolution and mediation; and Case Studies. Urban and Rural Restructuring: Local Responses:

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Environmental Pressures on Planet Earth: Introduction; Living beyond our means; and Resource Economics. Ecosystems; Ecosystems and How They Work; Impacts on and Changes in Ecosystems; Food Chains and Food Webs; mountain Systems and Management; Freshwater Systems and Management; Coastal Systems and Management; and Biomes. Guidelines and Strategies for the Management of the Environment: Strategic Environmental Assessments; Integrated Environmental Management; Environmental Impact Assessments; environmental Legislation & Policies; and Public participation and conflict resolution. Case Studies of Development in Sensitive Areas

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Define and study an urban planning problem using GIS. Implement effective, efficient and responsive GIS project management skills. Utilize advanced geospatial analysis skills. Developing a geodatabase. Model building. Developing a GIS portfolio piece.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PLANNING DESIGN 4

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: Planning Theory: Planning principles. Components of a city - natural versus urban. Design with nature; New planning principles; and conflict resolution. Development management and the planning hierarchy (Package of Plans); Introduction, overview and theory of plan making; high level planning; intermediate / mid-level planning; environmental impact management; regulatory framework; detail level / site specific planning; case studies and presentations

.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

PROJECT MANAGEMENT

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The Role of Project Management in Planning & Development. The Project Framework and the Project Environment. Project Management and the Project Manager. Project Organizations. Skills Management. Project Implementation Planning. Procurement, Contracting and the use of Professional Services. Project Finance and Financial Management. Project Management Systems. Managing People in Project Organizations. Contemporary Issues in Development Management.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

URBAN DEVELOPMENT MANAGEMENT

Pre-requisites: None

Course outline: The Context and Foundations for Urban Development: development management and the urban development cycle; development law and management; political and institutional framework of development management; community participation, empowerment and leadership; project management and design. Institutional dimensions of urban development: Structuring of delivery; urban development partnerships; problem-solving techniques; advance problem-solving techniques; project finance and the role of external funding in urban development management; approaches to outsourcing and procurement. Electives: Various Dimensions of Urban Development: Poverty and Sustainable Livelihoods; Public Health Challenges and HIV/AIDS; Gender and Urban Development; Community Safety and Public Security; area-based Local Economic Development; Housing and IN-SITU Upgrading; and land reform.

Assessment: All assessments are compulsory.

+27 21 959 6767
info@cput.ac.za
@CPUT
@wearecput
www.facebook.com/cput.ac.za
www.cput.ac.za

creating futures

Cape Peninsula
University of Technology